FOR LOVE OF THE WORD: A NEW TRANSLATION OF PELLIOT TIBÉTAIN 1287, THE OLD TIBETAN CHRONICLE, CHAPTER I

BETTINA ZEISLER*

INTRODUCTORY REMARKS

The Dunhuang text P.t.1287, better known as the Old Tibetan Chronicle (OTC), was fully translated in 1940 by Bacot & Toussaint, while the first chapter was re-translated 29 years later by Eric Haarh in 1969 and then again 37 years later by Nathan W. Hill in 2006, when he was working in our linguistic research project. According to mathematical principles, then, a further translation could not have been expected to appear before 2051, and one might perhaps wonder why a new attempt comes so shortly after the last one.

One of the goals of the said research project was to annotate Tibetan texts for syntactic evaluation. Already published translations of these texts were to be provided for readers not acquainted with Tibetan. It was not at all planned to generate new translations. Nevertheless, my colleague being eager to attempt a new translation and OTC constituting a particularly difficult text, his proposal was accepted with the objective that the translation reflected the annotation, so that it could have been a useful tool in the process of annotation and validation. But this did not work out, and since the resulting translation was technically unsuitable to accompany the annotation in as much the same way as the previous translations by Bacot & Toussaint (Bacot & al. 1940: 123-128) and Haarh (1969: 402-406), I eventually decided to provide yet another translation,† a translation, however,

which does not strive for originality or literary elegance, but is as faithful to the structure of the original as possible.

Hence I made no attempt to streamline the endless convoluted chains of non-finite clauses, which must throw any native English speaker into a state of terror. Hill's solution of marking sentence boundaries through the layout is certainly a good compromise, and I will follow his example in part. I should think, however, that the style chosen here has at least the benefit to not only reveal the flavour of the text, but also, and more importantly, to immediately expose the different rhetoric strategies of representation, such as the mere enumeration of (possibly historical) facts in short simple sentences in § 6, which stands in sharp contrast to the more condensed and complex mythological narrative in § 5, the latter consisting of only few sentences, but a lot of embedded structures. Like in literary German, Tibetan complex sentences may be helpful in representing complex situations, but they may also be used to veil facts and reasons (or their absence). And, like in German, they may be prone to linguistic accidents.

Despite, or perhaps rather because of, sticking slavishly to the text and the grammatical rules of Tibetan, I arrived in several cases at quite different an interpretation than previous translators. These results, I hope, should justify the over-hurried resumption of the translation task.

Tibetan prehistory is a difficult terrain, for lack of independent witnesses and because the authors or compilers from the earliest historical narratives and documents onwards always had their own vested interests in presenting an event from a certain perspective or in the reinterpretation of historical facts and legends in order to legitimate a new ruler, a ruling dynasty, or even to create a notion of unity or 'Tibetanness' amongst the rivalling clans of the most diverse tribal units. This constructive aspect of all historiographic narration and compilation has typically been ignored, even among western Tibetologists, as if the debates of post-modernism had nothing to do with our field. While the fiction of nativeness and chronological *order* in traditional Tibetan historiography is hardly ever challenged, I am definitely missing a similar faithfulness towards the text, when it comes to 'translating' or rather re-narrating its content.

Semantic and grammatical negligence, however, easily leads to misconceptions and hoaxes, which will then be repeated in citation chains from generation to generation. This will be sufficiently illustrated by the accompanying notes. But in order to demonstrate that this is a general problem, not restricted to a particularly difficult text, I should like to cite an example from Richardson (1998a [1980]: 93/97), whose translation of Šiḥlavarman's *Bkaḥmchid* gives the impression that the early Tibetans not only used to paint their faces (like the Ḥaža and other Central Asian people), but also anointed their whole body with red colour (and run

around naked?), and that this custom was apparently abolished only by the Buddhists.

The crucial passage runs as *lala ni skula dmar yaŋ dogs* | 'Some were addicted to colouring their bodies red'. First of all, Richardson overlooks the honorific character of *sku* (cf. clause v211 with note 81 for the same, clauses v169 and v170 with notes 51 and 52 for the opposite mistake). He further does not seem to be aware that the verb *dogs* 'fear, doubt' needs a second argument or a proposition, typically in the instrumental (as in the clauses immediately following), but occasionally also in the locative-purposive (as on p. 98). The latter case marker is to be found as suffix to the verb *dmaḥ* 'be low, decay' (*dma-r*, with regular omission of the final *-ḥ*), thus the whole passage should be translated as 'Some feared that with respect to the (emperor's) person [it] will become low' or more freely 'that the emperor gets common', indicating that one of the main objections against the introduction of Buddhism as state religion was that the divine status of the emperor might be affected.

dmar, as an adjectival basically of verbal nature, could only mean 'be, become red' but never 'make red'. The contrast between intransitive and transitive-causative verbs is constitutive for Tibetan verb morphology, but quite unfortunately many translators seem to either lack this distinction in their own language or might think that verb semantics is as irrelevant as grammar (see also notes 4, 5, 44, 61, and 83), and that one can freely change, e.g., the causative meaning of the verb *ḥdogs*, *btags*, *gdags*, *thogs* 'fasten, fix, attach something', via a reflexive 'attach o.s.' to an intransitive meaning 'be attached' and, with a further shift from the physical to the mental sphere, to the desired 'be addicted'. The verb *dogs* 'fear, doubt', for certain, can be easily confounded with *ḥdogs*, *btags*, *gdags*, *thogs* 'fasten, fix, attach to', but only if one does not pay attention to the spelling in the text — or if one holds (a) that notably the Old Tibetan authors did not master the principles of standardised orthography set up between the 16th and 19th century, or (b) that Tibetan orthography, whether standardised or not, is not based on realities in the spoken language, and (c) that, therefore, the Tibetan authors' use or non-use of prefixes or their choice of radicals would be arbitrary and irrelevant (see also note 46).

As a constant source of errors, our treatment of Old Tibetan texts solely from the point of view of Classical Tibetan grammar (or our limited understanding thereof) is based on the reverential fiction that the written language did not change over the last millennium, cf., e.g., Gedun Choephel 1978: 72 (the original Tibetan statement can be found in Dgebdun Choshphel, ed. 1979: 135):

> 1,300 years have evolved since the time writing was introduced in Tibet. Yet, orthography and forms of writing have not witnessed much transformation

through the years, and today, those with knowledge of Tibetan can decipher and comprehend inscriptions carved on stone pillars of old.

That this fiction is the outcome of a particular political situation is understandable, but the seeming coherence between past and present orthography was mainly achieved by repeated re-editions of earlier texts with 'corrections' following the orthographic fashion of the day, and sometimes improving for the worse. Like any other language, written Tibetan did undergo changes, particularly in its earlier phase, not only in the lexicon or in ways of spelling, but also in its grammar. Interestingly, many Old Tibetan particularities, be it second syllable de-aspiration or intervocalic voicing, be it the pragmatic use or non-use of case marking, continue into the modern spoken varieties, bypassing Classical Tibetan, which by virtue of the standardisation process almost became an artificial language. This is one of the reasons why I will often turn to the modern varieties, notably to Ladakhi. In doing so I do by no means want to insinuate that Ladakhi or West Tibetan in general were closely related to Old Tibetan and that there could be one-to-one equivalents. It is only that I have studied this variety in some detail.

In other instances, we can — if we only pay attention to it — observe shifts in meaning, going along, in the case of verbs, with a reorganisation of the argument structure, that is, the way case markers are used. The verb *sleb*, e.g., can be found in Old Tibetan documents with the transitive (possibly non-controlled) meaning 'reach out (for), try, be able to reach somebody', following the standard ergative pattern for transitive verbs (ergative – absolutive, our pattern 08, cf. Takeuchi 1995: 139, 149, nos. 01r08 and 03r08). In Classical Tibetan the meaning has shifted to an intransitive '(be able to) arrive at', but we can still find the verb in early classical texts with ergative plus locational (*ladon*) marking (our pattern 07), as in TVP, or, as, e.g., in the biographies of Milaraspa and Nāropa, varying between pattern 07 and the modern pattern 03a: absolutive – locational.‡

We should thus be careful with statements about the non-grammaticality of a certain passage. Like with 'non-standard' but *originally correct* spellings we might well be confronted with 'non-standard' but *originally correct* syntax, and such cases should definitely be taken more serious. Uray (1960: 50) already pointed out that the verb *stsol*, *stsal(d)*, *stsal*, *stsol(d)* 'give' can be found in the Old Tibetan annals constantly with double absolutive for the RECIPIENT as well as for the PATIENT, the thing given (OTA I, IOL Tib J 0750, ll. 130, 246, OTA II, Or 8212.187, ll. 35, not mentioned by Uray are Or 8212.187, ll. 48f., 59-61 (3x) and

---

‡ See Zeisler (2007a) and http://www.sfb441.uni-tuebingen.de/b11/b11fieldwork05.html#Clau ses. The first eleven patterns are common to all Tibetan languages, including Old and Classical Tibetan (cf. also Zeisler 2004: 255, but without *sigla*).

OTC ll. 200, 221f., 223, 229, 265f., 385f., and 415f., see also note 12; in all these instances, persons are granted a distinction and/ or some reward). Uray's observation, however, went largely unnoticed, as can be seen by Dotson's note (2009: 116, n. 277) when dealing with exactly the same passages. This astonishing construction may perhaps be typical only for a particular genre, such as the bureaucratic documents of the imperial administration, and as such it may constitute an archaic formula, preserving the trace of some meaning shift. It could also be due to the pragmatic use of case marking, and it could even constitute a selective violation of grammar. In any of these cases, the choice of an apparently non-standard (or no longer standard) construction may have conveyed a political message: the RECIPIENTs of the imperial favour should not think that they are more than will-less PATIENTs, victims, so to speak, of the benevolent act. We use to play with grammar in our particular mother tongues, and Tibetans, too, have ever since been doing so.

This does not mean that anything goes, and more particularly, any selective violation of grammar as much as the pragmatic usage of markers first of all presupposes, besides a suitable context, a commonly accepted rule. Conversely, we can only detect such violations and pragmatic usages, if not only we are familiar with the rules, but also take them seriously. Case and other grammatical markers may perhaps be used more flexible than in standardised Indo-European languages, but in the way they are used they are also limiting our freedom of interpretation, just as fences limit our freedom of rambling: trespass forbidden.

If it is asking to much from translators to first generate a faithful interlinear gloss for each clause before re-narrating its content according to a context yet to be established, it would already be quite beneficial if they would at least take into benevolent consideration such elementary features as compound formation (see especially note 46, but also notes 20, 54, 55, 66, and 68), word order rules (notes 20 and 24), case marking (notes 34, 39, 53, 54, and 60), or the functions of the Tibetan verb stems together with the two negation markers (notes 3, 4, 40, 61, 71, and 84). Nevertheless, only a strict glossing with no room for ambiguities and self-delusion may also lead to the detection of misconstrued sentences as indicators for manipulations of a given tradition.

The text of the Chronicle itself, with all its reordering, contradictions, and linguistic accidents (the extent of which became apparent to me only in the course of our annotation), indicates that it was most probably only a draft version, meant to be elaborated for a certain political purpose. The final version could have been expected to present the facts or fictions more 'orderly' in a more consistent interpretation, as known from later historiographic works. Whether this final version was ever written and whether it could have influenced later traditions, is only one of the minor mysteries surrounding the Tibetan past. The linguistic annotator and

the faithful translator may curse misconstrued or ambiguous sentences, which fall out of the annotation scheme, but for the historian, the unfinished character of the Chronicle is a piece of luck. The unpolished text reveals where texts of different provenience had been mounted, and the conflicting statements may shed light not only on the process of construing a political identity and a history, but also on facts and events that were suppressed or reframed in later times.

Given the problematic nature of the text, it is of course impossible to always arrive at a single, or the only feasible, solution, and for lack of independent evidence my interpretations cannot be much more than suggestions. Wherever I happened to overlook a crucial detail or came to a wrong conclusion, I should humbly ask to take the resulting error as an incentive for a better argument and further research.

While working on this translation, I enjoyed an intensive exchange of ideas with Dr. Helga Uebach, formerly Bayerische Akademie der Wissenschaften, and I am particularly grateful for her patiently listening to my ideas and reading earlier versions, even more so for sharing her experience through critics, advice, background information, and suggestions for alternative interpretations. I should also like to acknowledge the contribution of my former colleague Nathan W. Hill, who forced me, mainly through what I immodestly believe to be errors, to take much closer a look than planned at the semantic constituents of our syntactic units, and consequently at their historical underpinnings. This had implications far beyond this translation. Dissent, forcing one to reread the texts and to rethink and refine one's arguments is always an important, maybe the most important, facilitator of new insights. In this sense, I should be glad if the readers would see the repeated critics of previous translations not as product of pernicketiness, but as a welcome opportunity to refine our still quite restricted knowledge of (Old) Tibetan syntax and semantics.

<div style="text-align:center">TECHNICAL NOTE</div>

In accordance with the annotation,§ the translation is divided into six main paragraphs. Following Hill's example, a new line is started with every new sentence, imbedded speech, however, will not be marked off.

---

§ The technically sophisticated representation built by Frank Müller-Witte, where text, translation, and the annotated information are combined, had become unavailable and is presently under reconstruction by Fabian Kliebhan. A much more simplistic graphical and non-searchable tree view of text and annotation, together with a mere interlinear version can be found in two different realisations for each paragraph under http://www.sfb441.uni-tuebingen.de/b11/b11corpora.html#clarkTrees.

In our annotation, each verb has been assigned an index number (v1-v225), in linear order, such as the verbs occur in the text. These index numbers are added to their equivalents in the translation, such as "small $_{v1}$". Incidentally, this will help to monitor the original clause order, and thus allow a greater flexibility in the translation. The index numbers will also serve to refer in the notes to text passages further up or further down. Each clause is defined as containing not more than a single, possibly complex, verb. Clauses without verbs remain without index. A sentence is defined as containing not more than one finite clause (for exceptions of this rule and further details of these definitions, see http://www. sfb441.uni-tuebingen.de/b11/b11annotation.html#elements).

Line breaks will be indicated only approximately by the mark ^{x}|, ideally placed after the index number of a verb or after an introductory phrase for direct speech, whichever comes last in a line (or starts at the end of the line). Where no verb and no introductory phrase are available, it will follow the noun phrase (NP) closest to the end. For better orientation, clause numbers and line numbers are resumed in the paragraph headers.

Uncertain readings receive a question mark prefix; truly questionable readings will get a double prefix. The reasons for such marking are typically discussed in a following note. Literal readings, etymologies, and alternative interpretations will be indicated in round brackets. The sign / will be used in place of the word "or". Any addition to the text will be presented in square brackets. Notes to the translation will be indicated by angle brackets, in order to better distinguish them from the index numbers, and since most of them are quite substantial, they will follow the translation as endnotes.

As usual in historical linguistics, an asterisk * is used for hypothetical or non-attested forms. The phonemic representation of spoken forms is indicated by slashes: /…/, while square brackets are reserved for phonetic representations. Braces indicate that the morpheme given has several allomorphs.

While citing written Tibetan forms, I will represent Tibetan polysyllabic words (including case markers) as what they are: (inflected) words. Morpheme boundaries will not be indicated, as they are not necessarily identical with syllable boundaries. (Whoever happens thus to read out the name of the nurse accidentally as *Skyib-rliŋ-ma* would do so correctly, cf. also note 48.) Postpositions, however, are joined with a hyphen, since it is not entirely clear whether or not they are clitics, belonging to the intonational unit *word*, as in Ladakhi or Balti. Names will be flagged by a capital *initial*, which we can expect to be still pronounced in most, albeit not all Old Tibetan varieties. Epigraphic features will not be distinguished, except when necessary for the discussion. In that case, I shall particularly discriminate between the triangular Central Asian *va* and the quadrangular Tibetan *ba* — both having the double value of a voiced labial stop [ba], or a bilabial [ßa]

or labiodental [va] voiced fricative —, and both will be differentiated from the semi-subscribed -ụ-, the precursor of the *wazur*. Epigraphic questions will be discussed and illustrations of the letters involved will be given separately after the textual notes.

To the three previous translations as well as to the summary provided by Macdonald (1971: 221-223), I will refer only by the name of the respective author(s), assuming that the reader can easily locate the quoted passages. All other references will be given in full.

TRANSLATION

1. §, clause v1-v27 (OTC ll. 1-6): Drigum's naming

When Drigum, the scion <1> was still small $_{v1}$ in size, [they] asked $_{v3}$ the nurse Grožama Skyibrliŋma: "How (lit. as what) shall [he] be named?" $_{v2}$ [and] from the words of the nurse: ^{1}| "The Golden Rock of *Skyi*, <2> did it crumble to pieces $_{v4}$ or not? $_{v5}$ *Daŋma*, the Meadow of the *ḥbri*, did it get burnt by fire $_{v6}$ or not? $_{v7}$ Lake *Damle*, the Pointed Lake, did it dry up $_{v8}$ or not?", $_{v9}$ ^{2}| <3> thus it was spoken. $_{v10}$

"The rock did not crumble. $_{v11}$ Nor did the lake dry up. $_{v12}$ Nor did the meadow get burnt by fire", $_{v13}$ so [they] answered (lit. said), $_{v14}$ ^{3}| [but] the nurse Grožama, being aged, $_{v15}$ heard $_{v16}$ it just the opposite way as due to her ears: "Not only did the rock crumble into pieces, $_{v17}$ but the meadow got burnt by fire, $_{v18}$ and the lake dried up, $_{v19}$ as well", having heard $_{v20}$ ^{4}| it this way, [she] spoke: $_{v24}$ "Well then, in order to perform the rulership (appropriately) (lit. to perform $_{v21}$ water to perform $_{v22}$ ~~existence) /in~~ order to kill the water spirit (lit. to kill $_{v21}$ the water, to kill $_{v22}$ the spirit) <4> name $_{v23}$ ^{5}| [him] as Drigum, <5> the scion!", and thus they named $_{v25}$ [him] as Drigum, the scion, but the name-giving was an error $_{v26}$ <6> and [it] affected (lit. entered) $_{v27}$ also his mind (/ personality).

2. § 2, clause v28-v73 (OTC ll. 6-21): fight between Loŋam and Drigum

The divine son, not being comparable to (lit. not having the manner $_{v28}$ ^{6}| of) [ordinary] men, <7> [namely as] possessing $_{v30}$ great gifts and magical powers, such as verily going to heaven, $_{v29}$ was unable to withhold $_{v31}$ ^{7}| heat and pride and when, being full of violence, $_{v32}$ <8> vying $_{v33}$ and chasing $_{v34}$ [everyone], [he] called upon $_{v37}$ all (lit. nine) paternal bondsmen [and] relatives and all (lit. three) maternal bondsmen [and] relatives: <9> "Dare [you] to fight $_{v35}$ [Us] as an enemy and stand up $_{v36}$ ^{8}| against [Us] as a yak?", <10> one by one, they said $_{v39}$ "[I] shan't dare". $_{v38}$

When marshal Loŋam likewise said $_{v41}$ ^{9}¦ "[I] shan't dare", $_{v40}$ [the emperor] did not accept $_{v42}$ [it] and thereupon Loŋam prayed: $_{v43}$ "If [you] do not accept $_{v44}$ ^{10}¦ such [answer], if [you then] confer $_{v46}$ to me the divine treasures, such as the self-stabbing spear, self-cutting sword, <11> self-donning mail, and self-parrying shield, etc., ^{11}¦ the great magical treasures that you possess, $_{v45}$ [then I] shall dare", $_{v47}$ thus [he] prayed. $_{v48}$

Then [the emperor] conferred $_{v49}$ ^{12}¦ [to Loŋam] <12> all the divine treasures.

Thereupon marshal Loŋam, on his part, went $_{v50}$ ^{13}¦ ahead to [his] castle (/ encampment) Myaŋro Šampo.

After the emperor likewise betook $_{v51}$ himself to Myaŋro Šampo, [they] arranged $_{v52}$ the battle in the grove Myaŋro Thalba and then, as from the words of the marshal ^{14}¦ it was prayed $_{v54}$ to cut $_{v53}$ the divine cord made of coral/ the all-transcending divine cord (*dbuḥḥbreŋ zaŋyag*), <13> and as it was [further] prayed $_{v56}$ ^{15}¦ to also turn upside down $_{v55}$ (lit. to show with the opening downwards) the nine-?stepped divine ladder (*dbuḥskas stendguḥ*), <14> [the emperor] granted $_{v57}$ these two [requests] accordingly.

Thereupon Loŋam fastened $_{v58}$ ^{16}¦ two hundred golden spear heads on the horns <15> of (lit. upon) a hundred oxen <16> and loaded $_{v59}$ [sacks of] ashes on [their] backs, following which [Loŋam and the emperor] (started to) fight $_{v60}$ among the oxen, <17> so that the ashes got whirled $_{v61}$ about [because the oxen (got) pushed against each other and the sacks got torn by the spear heads], and within that [haze] Loŋam attacked $_{v62}$ ^{17}¦ [the emperor].

As for the emperor Drigum, [the ancestral deity] Ldebla Guŋrgyal tried to pull him up $_{v63}$ to heaven, but Loŋam drew out $_{v64}$ ^{18}¦ a monkey from [his own] armpit, who then cast $_{v65}$ Ldebla Guŋrgyal into the womb of the glacier Titse, <18> [where the latter] betook himself [to heaven]. $_{v66}$ <19>

Since [he =Loŋam/ ?the monkey] had killed $_{v67}$ ^{19}¦ emperor Drigum likewise at this place, [he =Loŋam] placed $_{v68}$ the corpse into [two] juxtaposed [vessels], with copper ?seals (/ with ??hundred iron [nails]/ with the ?*Chinese [Ornament]*) <20> and discarded $_{v69}$ [it] in the middle of the Rtsaŋ river. <21>

At Chabgžug Sertshaŋs <22> [it] went $_{v70}$ ^{20}¦ into the stomach of the water spirit Ḥodde Bedde Riŋmo. Having, in turn, named $_{v71}$ the two sons as Šakhyi and Ñakhyi, <23> [he =Loŋam] banished $_{v72}$ [them] to the land of Rkoŋ and separated $_{v73}$ ^{21}¦ them (/ redistributed [their property]).

3. § 3, v74-v86 (OTC ll. 21-26): the killing of Loŋam

Thereafter, two [loyal men], Rhulbžikhugs of the Rhyamo clan <29> and Btsan-bžoŋrgyal of the Snanam clan smeared $_{v74}$ poison into the fur of the great dog of

the dominion: Ḥonzugsyargrags (?), and [into the fur] of the two [dogs] of Ḥjaŋ: Zulemaḥjaŋ ^{22}¦ and Ḥonrku (?), and when, passing $_{v75}$ the ?rock shelter (/ ?rocks and slates) <24> at (lit. of) the narrow passage, [they] examined (lit. looked at) $_{v76}$ a [bird's] stomach <25> for the signs: the signs were good, $_{v77}$ ^{23}¦ thus arriving $_{v78}$ in the land [of] Myaŋro Šampo, [they] infiltrated (/ ?fastened; lit. stringed) $_{v79}$ [the dogs] with a trick, and while there was $_{v80}$ poison in the dogs' fur, now my marshal(s) led $_{v81}$ ^{24}¦ [them] along, and as for the good dogs, Loŋam's hand patted $_{v82}$ them, and since our marshal(s) had anointed $_{v83}$ the dogs' fur with poison, [his=Loŋam's] hand got besmeared, $_{v84}$ and [so] [they] killed $_{v85}$ ^{25}¦ [him] and took $_{v86}$ his life (lit. flesh) in revenge. <26>

4. *§ 4, v87-v119 (OTC ll. 26-35): the Rhya-Rulaskyes fraternal war,*
Ŋarleskyes' birth and his inquiry about father and lord

Thereafter, <27> the son of Bkrags, the divine son Rulaskyes, <28> a paternal cousin, fought $_{v87}$ ^{26}¦ with Rhya <29> as a paternal cousin [i.e., in a fraternal war]. <30>

Rhya cut off $_{v88}$ the Bkrags lineage. [He] ?drove away $_{v89}$ <31> the livestock. <32>

One consort <33> of Bkrags fled $_{v90}$ and was able to rescue $_{v91}$ herself in the land of her father and brother(s).

Carrying $_{v92}$ ^{27}¦ a child in her womb (lit. belly), [she] had gone, $_{v93}$ and [thus it] was born (lit. appeared) $_{v94}$ [there].

As soon as the son was able to stand upright $_{v95}$ among the [men of the] Spu [clan], <34> [he said] to his mother: "If every man and every bird (/ ?human) <35> has $_{v96}$ a lord, where is $_{v97}$ ^{28}¦ *my* lord? <36> If every man and every bird (/ ?human) <35> has $_{v98}$ a father, where is $_{v99}$ *my* father?", thus [he] said. $_{v100}$

"Show $_{v101}$ [both of them] to me!", having spoken $_{v102}$ thus, from the words of the mother: ^{29}¦ "Child little, don't talk big (lit. don't be big $_{v103}$ with your mouth)! Colt little, <37> don't talk strong (lit. don't be strong $_{v104}$ with your mouth)! <38> I don't know $_{v105}$ [nothing]", having spoken $_{v106}$ thus, from the words of the son of the Spu, Ŋarleskyes: ^{30}¦ <39> "If [you] do not show $_{v107}$ [them] (/ if you do not explain [this]) to me [I] am going $_{v109}$ to die", $_{v108}$ it was thus uttered $_{v110}$ and [his] mother explained $_{v111}$ [it, right from] the beginning: <40> "As for your father, Rhya has killed $_{v112}$ ^{31}¦ him. As for your lord, marshal Loŋam killed $_{v113}$ him, placed $_{v114}$ ^{32}¦ the corpse into [two] juxtaposed ?[vessels], with copper ?seals, <41> and discarded $_{v115}$ [it] in the middle of the Rtsaŋ river. At Chabgžug Sertshaŋs [it] went $_{v116}$ ^{33}¦ into the stomach of the water spirit Ḥode Riŋmo. As for the royal sons, the two brothers, having named $_{v117}$ [them] as Šakhyi and Ñakhyi, [he =Loŋam]

banished $_{v118}$ [them] to the land of Rkoŋ and separated $_{v119}$ ^{34}¦ [them] (/ redistributed [their property]).”

~~5.~~ *§ 5, v120-v182 (OTC ll. 35-49): ransom of Drigum's corpse*

Thereafter, from the words of the son of the Spu clan, Ŋarlaskyes: “The one destroyed by men (/ the destroyed man) [i.e. Bkrags], his traces to follow, $_{v120}$ and the one destroyed by water [=Drigum], his remnants <42> to search, $_{v121}$ I shall go”, $_{v122}$ this was uttered, $_{v123}$ and [he] started off. $_{v124}$ ^{35}¦

  In Bresnar [in] the land [of] Rkoŋ [he] met $_{v125}$ with the sons Šakhyi and Ñakhyi, on the one hand.

  On the other hand, [he] met $_{v126}$ ^{36}¦ with the water spirit Ḥode Bedde Riŋmo.

  “By what that you wish $_{v127}$ [in exchange] for the corpse of the emperor may [I] ransom $_{v128}$ [it]?”, having said $_{v129}$ this, [the water spirit] spoke: $_{v134}$ “[I] do not desire $_{v130}$ anything else: [I] want $_{v133}$ one who has $_{v131}$ human eyes like bird eyes, <43> one who covers $_{v132}$ ^{37}¦ [them] from beneath”, <44> but although the son of the Spu clan, Ŋarlaskyes searched $_{v135}$ ^{38}¦ towards the four confines of heaven, [he] did not find $_{v138}$ [one with] human eyes, [but] similar $_{v136}$ to the eyes of a bird, [one] who covers $_{v137}$ [them] from beneath; then, [his] provisions finished, $_{v139}$ his boots having got holes, $_{v140}$ [he] came back $_{v141}$ ^{39}¦ to [his] mother and after telling $_{v154}$ her: “As for the one destroyed by men (/ the destroyed man) [i.e. Bkrags], [I] was able to follow $_{v142}$ his traces, as well as for the one destroyed by water [=Drigum], [I] found $_{v143}$ his remnants. [I] met $_{v144}$ ^{40}¦ with the sons Šakhyi and Ñakhyi, and when [I] also met $_{v145}$ with the water spirit Ḥode Riŋmo, [the spirit] said: $_{v149}$ ‘As ransom for the corpse [I] want $_{v148}$ ^{41}¦ [one with] human eyes, [but] similar $_{v146}$ to the eyes of a bird, one who covers $_{v147}$ [them] from beneath’, and since [I] have not [yet] found $_{v150}$ [any such], [I] must set out $_{v152}$ again to search $_{v151}$ [this being]. Pack up (/ ?Give me) <45> [some] provisions!”, $_{v153}$ he went off $_{v155}$ ^{42}¦ [again].

  As [he] came $_{v156}$ to [a place] below Gaŋparḥphrun and went up $_{v158}$ ^{43}¦ to a daughter of the family Manbird (/ ?Manman), <46> [incidentally] someone who was working $_{v157}$ on a canal (lit. was making a canal)/ ?was preparing to sleep (/ ??and went up to [someone] who was trying to make a daughter of the family Manbird~~/~~ ?Manman asleep), <47> and when, [realising that] [s/he] had, $_{v162}$ lying $_{v159}$ in a cradle, <48> a baby-boy [who] covers $_{v161}$ the eyes from below, similar $_{v160}$ to bird eyes, [he] asked $_{v165}$ the mother: “If [I] shall ransom $_{v163}$ that one, what do [you] wish $_{v164}$ ^{44}¦ [in exchange]?”, “[I] do not wish $_{v166}$ anything else: Forever and ever, whenever the emperor, lord or wife, dies, $_{v167}$ ^{45}¦ as for [one's] top-knot ?ribbon (?=turban) / ?fine ?plaits, <49> having tied it (/ ?them) up, $_{v168}$ <50> having [one's] face anointed $_{v169}$ with vermilion, <51> having applied ornaments $_{v170}$ <52> on [one's] body, [one] assembles $_{v171}$ ^{46}¦ <53> at the corpse of the emperor. For (/

Towards) the people: swag and swaggering (*ḥphrogrlom*). <54> For (/ Towards) the fare: eating and drinking! <55> Shall you act $_{v172}$ like this or not?", $_{v173}$ the mother having spoken $_{v174}$ thus, [he] laid down a solemn vow (lit. declared $_{v176}$ [47] a vow, declared $_{v177}$ a high [one]), <56> [he] made a commitment (lit. made the promise, $_{v178}$ made the word $_{v179}$) to act accordingly, $_{v175}$ and went, $_{v181}$ leading along $_{v180}$ [48] the daughter of the family Manbird (/ ?Manman).

[He] deposited $_{v182}$ [the child / ??the daughter] in the belly <57> of the water spirit Ḥode Riŋmo as ransom for the corpse.

~~6.~~ *§ 6, v183-v226 (OTC ll. 49-62): Spude Guŋrgyal assumes power*

Ña[khyi] and the [future] majesty (*lha* or *lhasras*) both <58> took hold $_{v183}$ of the corpse of the emperor.

Into the flank <59> of Mt. Gyaŋto, <60> spanning [itself] aloft (/the lofty tent-pitcher/ ?the massive (=aloft and concave); *Blaḥbubs*), <61> [they] built $_{v185}$ [49] a funeral monument. <62>

As for the younger brother Ñakhyi, he hosts $_{v186}$ the funeral repast.

As for the elder brother Šakhyi, he goes (/ ?went) $_{v188}$ [50] <63> to take revenge $_{v187}$ for the father.

As for Ñakhyi, he is (/ ?was) $_{v189}$ the White [Prince] of Rkoŋ.

[As for ø ?=Šakhyi, he /He ?=Ñakhyi] <64> departs (/ ?departed) $_{v190}$ with an army [of] about three thousand three hundred [men].

[He] goes (/ went) $_{v191}$ [51] <65> to [his] castle (/ encampment) Pyiŋba.

"If there is $_{v192}$ no lord as (lit. of/ who is) the patron (lit. father) of the country, <66> the outer nomads and the vassals will, one by one, turn/ run away (and leave). $_{v193}$ <67> If the rain as (lit. of/ who is) the patron of the inhabited places (*dog*) <68> does not come $_{v194}$ [52] [in time], seeds and ?insects <69> will one by one decay", $_{v195}$ <70> thus [he/ ?they] spoke. $_{v196}$

[He] crossed $_{v197}$ the pass of the Menpa chain.

[He] passed through $_{v198}$ [53] the long gorge of Tiŋsrab.

[He] came $_{v199}$ to Bachos Guŋdaŋ.

When [he] came $_{v200}$ [54] to Myaŋro Šampo, the hundred men [of the] Loŋam [clan], having sheltered $_{v201}$ <71> their heads with pots, [nevertheless] run (/ ?jumped) $_{v202}$ into death.

The hundred women [of the] Loŋam [clan], having pressed $_{v203}$ large iron pans against their breasts, were [nevertheless] disgraced (/ ?were scared shitless). $_{v204}$ <72>

[He] overthrew $_{v205}$ [55] Myaŋro Šampo.

The bipeds [he] took $_{v206}$ as prisoners, the quadrupeds [he] confiscated $_{v207}$ as [his/ the state's] livestock, <73> and went $_{v208}$ [56] [back] to Bachos Guŋdaŋ.

[He] sang _{v209} the following song [of triumph]. <74>

"ḥabañi-ñepañid. In every <75> bird (?man) <76> the tip of the lance. <77> In every hare the tip <78> of the boot. ⁵⁷¦ The thigh has been hit/ slapped. _{v210} <79> The royal corpse has been disposed off. _{v211} Wode [?=Ḥolde Guŋrgyal] is [the] true [ruler/ deity] (/ The pit is no more). _{v212} <80> Spude [?=Spu(l)de Guŋrgyal] is [the] true [ruler] (/ The *spu* (?=man/ ?=*spur*) is no more)", _{v213} <81> thus sang (lit. spoke) [he]. _{v214}

[He] went _{v215} ⁵⁸¦ again (back) to Pyiŋba Stagrtse.

[He] went _{v216} [there] as the lord of the local patrons.

[Thus:] "[In] the country, the outer nomads and the vassals will not turn away. _{v217} ⁵⁹¦ Because the water as the patron of the inhabited places has come, _{v218} seeds and ?insects will not decay." _{v219} Such sang (lit. spoke) _{v220} [he] that song.

[As] if a hearth were to be established _{v000} ⁶⁰¦ below <82> [he] had brought down _{v221} iron ore <83> from high above and came _{v222} as the lord.

When he was engendered: _{v223} Spude Guŋrgyal; when he died: _{v224} Graŋmo Gnam Bseḥbrtsig. <84> [He] came _{v225} ⁶¹¦ as the lord for the black-headed bipeds, and as the assistance for the maned quadrupeds.

NOTES TO THE TRANSLATION

<1> *btsanpo*.

The title or attribute is usually related to the adjective *btsanpo* 'strong, mighty, powerful, violent' and to a class of spirits, the *btsan*, which are taken to be 'violent' or 'powerful'. Some traditions (particularly also those of Western Tibet) have *btsadpo* instead of *btsanpo*, some only for individual names. This alternation indicates that we deal here with a derivation from an open verb root, like in the case of *ltanmo* ~ *ltadmo* 'spectacle, show' related to *lta*, *bltas*, *blta*, *ltos* 'look at' (see Francke & Simon 1929: 120-121 and Simon 1977 for many more examples). The root in question is √*tsha*. While the corresponding inagentive verb I: *ḥtsha, II: *tshas 'be born' is reflected only in nominal derivations such as *butsha* 'son', also in names as X-*tsha* 'son of the X-clan', *tshabo* 'grandson, nephew', or *tshas* 'woman in labour' (*tsha-s* 'garden' might be equally related as a place where plants grow up), the agentive-causative counterpart is I/III: *btsaḥ*, II/IV: *btsas* 'bear, bring forth'. Note also *btsazug* 'labour pains' (JÄK), which clearly shows that this is, in fact, exclusively a female task.

The derivation *btsa-n* or *btsa-d* most probably refers to the product, the child(ren), and if, as I think, the suffixes could indicate plurality or collectivity, the expression refers primarily to a group of siblings *from the same mother* (for

other examples of the suffixes *-d* and *-n* as collective markers, cf. also Zeisler forthcoming, chapter 4, § 2.4.3, notes on *smin-(drug)*, *spun*, *(ma)smad*, *(pha)spad*, and *spud*). With the derivative morphemes *-po* and *-mo*, a specific son or daughter would be singled out of the collective. Literally then, *btsanpo* or *btsanmo* could be translated as '(immediately) co-gnate son' or 'daughter'. As second syllable in names, *-btsan* most probably had exactly the same function as its intransitive sibling *-tsha* (and in at least in the former case, the preceding name should have ideally been the mother's name).

  In the context of the princelings of early Tibet, who were not in the least as powerful or even terrifying as their historical counterparts or as their later construction as supernatural beings might suggest, I would think, that the attribute *btsanpo* merely indicates that the person in question was, in fact, brought forth from, or belonging to, the ruling lineage. Rulers who do not bear this attribute, might then be suspect to be outsiders or usurpers.

  As Dotson (2009: 119, n. 294) remarks with respect to the princesses mentioned in the Annals, "all those ladies referred to as *btsan-mo* — that is, excluding in-marrying foreign princesses — appear to be sisters of the reigning emperor." That means that in this context, at least, *btsanmo* can be translated as 'lady of same birth', and most probably, or at least ideally, as 'having the same mother' as the legitimate heir. Similarly, in the case of the Tibetan emperors, the title *btsanpo* most probably only means that the person is (accepted as) an offspring of the ~~heir-bearing~~ mother (cf. Richardson 1998b [1988], according to whom Ḥod-sruŋ's main problem in being accepted as *btsanpo* was that he was not a child of Glaŋ Darma's wife). This would be just another indication for the important role of the heir-bearing wife and her family (cf. also Dotson 2004 for the role of her male relatives). Giving an incoming princess the title *btsanmo*, would likewise indicate that she is at least presumed to be *of same birth* as the ruler or the heir apparent of her home country or that she is *of legitimate birth*, and in any case equal to the *legitimate heir* in Tibet. Cf. also Uebach (1997), according to whom a *btsanmo* was primarily a daughter of the ruling *btsanpo*, a position she has since given up (p.c.).

<center>*<2> mar.*</center>

As a reference to a particular place, it is not unlikely that the Žaŋžuŋ-ian meaning 'golden' had been intended and not the CT meaning 'red' for which the spelling would be *dmar-*. For the respective colour terms cf. also Zeisler forthcoming, chapter 4 § 2.4.1.

<3> ~~v4 – v9~~, v11-v13, v17-v19.

Contrary to the preceding translations, Hill (2006a: 89f, n. 4) insists on a present tense reading, explaining this as follows:

> The three verbs *rñil* 'crumble,' *tshig* 'burn,' and *skams* 'dry' appear to be present stems. They are here unexpectedly negated with *ma* rather than *mi*. Bacot et al. translate these passages with the *passé composé* (1940: 123), and Haarh with a present perfect (1969: 402). To me present makes better sense. If these events had taken place very far in the past the nurse would already know about them. Additionally, to ask about them in the past implies some expectation on part of the nurse that they are likely, whereas a present simply asks about their current condition.

This is unfortunately not the only misleading note on Tibetan, cf. particularly also Hill (2006a: 95, n. 27), where he declassifies an absolutely common construction: verb plus {*kyaŋ*} as "odd".

skams is clearly not a 'present' stem, but quite evidently (an old) stem II of the adjectival I: *skam*, II: *skams* 'get, be dry'. The derived nominal adjective *skampo* 'dry' indicates that the final *-s* did not belong to the root, and that we are, in fact, dealing with two verb stems. Stem II can have a resultative or present perfect function (present result of a past event), notably in the case of adjectivals. The question how far away in the past the event took place is not crucial for the use of stem II, particularly not when used with the function of a present perfect. Stem I, by contrast, may denote the inchoative meaning of adjectivals: *get X* (cf. Zeisler 2004: 450). *rñil* and *tshig* are verbs with no (apparent) stem alternation, although the form *rñiltam* points to an inherent *-d* suffix as a potential stem II morpheme. In the case of verbs without stem alternation, the negation markers *ma* and *mi* (OT *myi*) help to locate the event or rather non-event on the time axis, *ma* usually indicating a past or anterior situation, and apart from its use with verbal nouns or in prohibitions and similar modal contexts, never referring to ongoing or future situations (the use of the negation markers is described in some detail in Zeisler 2004, part II, sections 2.4, 3.3.3 (towards the end), 3.3.4, 3.6.4, 3.6.5, and 3.7.1).

Presumably not all native speakers of American English would follow Hill's argument above, and even if so, the somewhat particular restrictions for the use of a present perfect in English cannot be the measure for its use in other languages. In German as well as in French the present perfect or *passé composé* makes perfect sense in this context: the nurse is asking about a present state resulting from an event that necessarily took place or started before the speech act. As all three events imply a transition, it would be rather strange to ask about them in the sim-

ple or progressive present tense. It may be further noted that apart from English, present perfect constructions may compete with present tense constructions in so far as they can describe the ongoing result of an already past (in itself bounded) beginning of an unbounded state or activity (e.g. Ancient Greek ἕστηκα 'I stand/ am standing' = 'I have stood up', πέφρικα 'I stare/ am staring' = 'I have started staring'). With expressions such as *ŋal soŋ* '[I] am tired (JÄK) = '[I] have become tired', Tibetan behaves rather like Ancient Greek (Zeisler 2004: 102, with further references for Ancient Greek, section II.3.5.3. for the perfect function of stem II in OT and CT, sections II.4.2.5, II.5.2.5, and III.3.8.2 for the perfect constructions in the modern varieties).

<center><4> *chu dgum*, *sri dgum*.</center>

It seems to be a common poetic or rhetorical means in Old Tibetan to divide up a compound and duplicate the predication (R.A. Stein 1962: 216), cf. also the division of *dmaḥmtho* in clauses v176 and v177 (ll. 47f.), and of *damtshig* in clauses v178 and v179 (l. 48). A similar example, but without predication, is the division of *phatshan* in clause v37 (l. 8). Bacot & Toussaint translate the phrase as 'pour tuer les humeurs et les Sri'. Haarh renders it as 'because there is water-death, and there is sri-death'. Similarly Wang & Bsodnams Skyid (1992: 79, n. 127) interpret this phrase as the having died (*šiba*) in the water or under a knife (they apparently take *sri* as a mystical Bonpo expression for *gri*). All three over-look that the form *dgum*, first of all belongs to a transitive verb 'kill', and secondly, that it is stem III, the so-called future stem, which has a patient-oriented gerundive function with a strong obligational character, hence referring to the '(item) to be killed' (cf. Zeisler 2004: 64).

    Gñaḥgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan (1995: 21, n. 1) rejects this interpretation (… *don yinpar bkralpa yodkyaŋ*: 'it has been explained as … , but', not "I explain that this means…" as rendered by Hill 2006: 90, n. 6). According to him, *chusri* may be an old variant (*brdarñiŋ*) of *chabsrid* 'dominion, rulership'. If the meaning were thus not (a prediction) that the sovereignty would decay (*ḥdir chabsrid ñamsdamssu ḥgyur ḥgrobaḥi don mayinnam*), the phrase should otherwise refer to hindrances and annihilation caused by evil spirits (*gdongyis bgegbar chad-byed-paḥi don*). Quite interestingly, in legal contexts, the verb *ḥgum(s), bkum, dgum, khum* 'kill' or at least its stem III can have a quite different meaning: 'carry out, perform appropriately' (Dotson forthcoming, p. 79, n. 10 with further references). Although some doubts remain with respect to the equation of *chusri* and *chabsrid*, not so much because of the missing final *-d*, but rather because *chab* is a honorific variant of *chu* and we should not expect a non-honorific variant for 'dominion', I should think that Gñaḥgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan's first interpretation comes

closest to the intended meaning. The phrase, however, is not a prediction but rather a directive or wish. The name is given in view of a (misperceived) impending crisis and should have empowered the ruler to steer through this crisis. Of course, this narreme is only an attempt in retrospect to etymologise an unknown name.

<div align="center"><5> Drigum.</div>

Disregarding the fundamental intransitive vs. transitive-causative distinction of Tibetan verbs, Macdonald suggests the meaning 'tué par les démons'. The compound in question should have been *Dribkum. The same objection holds against the standard interpretation of Grigum as 'killed by/ through a knife'. The grammatically only possible interpretation would be either 'the Dri who died/ vanished', Dri being the undergoer, or 'having died because of the Dri' (or 'because of/ through a knife'), Dri (or knife) being the cause, not the agent of the event. See the end of note 84 for a theoretically possible interpretation of this name.

<div align="center"><6> noŋste.</div>

Bacot & Toussaint translate this likewise as 'ce fut une faute', Haarh more freely as 'was ominous'. Hill chose the possible meaning 'regret', but then, given the close connection between two events indicated by the lhagbcas morpheme {ste}, which does not easily support a 'subject' switch without contextual support, the 'subject' of regretting should also have been the 'subject' of entering Drigum's mind in the following clause, which would not make much sense.

It should be noted, however, that the verb noŋs also means 'be dead'. In this connection it might not be irrelevant that according to a minor Tibetan tradition, Drigum (or Grigum) was the ruler's posthumous name (Khyuŋpo Blogros Rgyalmtshan, 81.4, as cited by Linnenborn 2004: 80 with n. 115, and Ñaŋral Ñima Ḥodzer, Metog sñiŋpo, A 240.3; I.1, T. 116.2.2, as cited ibid. p. 81 with n. 118).

<div align="center"><7> myiḥi myitshulte.</div>

With Hill (2006a: 90, n. 8) I follow Bacot & Toussaint, since it is more probable that the emperor, styled a descendant of the gods, is not like other human beings, than that he is (as suggested by Haarh). The word tshul is normally a noun. The lhagbcas morpheme {ste} may well combine with nouns, especially when introducing an enumeration, but in our case the resulting meaning 'the human manner of man' would be extremely infelicitous with the enumeration of super-human faculties. Therefore, the syllable myi can only be interpreted as a negation morpheme and not as the word 'man' for the story to make sense. But because nega-

tion markers only combine with verbs, *tshul* must function here as a verb, with the extremely rare case frame absolutive – genitive (14b). Note the similar use of the genitive with the modal verb *rigs* 'be suitable, proper, necessary': *mismrabaḥi mirigsso* 'it is not right not to say [anything]' (JÄK sub *rigs*, *rigspa* vb).

<8> *btsan*.

Bacot & Toussaint avoid an exact translation. Haarh and Hill take *btsan* to be the agent, the former keeping the word untranslated, the latter taking it as a short form of *btsanpo*. Wang & Bsodnams Skyid (1992: 80, n. 129) interpret *btsan* as an adverb of manner: *btsanšedkyis* 'by intimidation' (cf. TETT; and possibly not "with imperial authority" as Hill 2006: 91, n. 10 renders this phrase). Gñaḥgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan (1995: 21, n. 4) suggests to read *btsan* and the following verb as a collocation with the meaning 'compete with respect to bravery' (*dpaḥrtsaṅagran*). This is a possibility, I do not want to rule out completely, but according to the context of the story, the competition is what Drigum intends to do, but not what he is already doing before or when challenging his vassals. Macdonald renders the phrase very freely as 'sur de sa force'. All translations thus take *btsan* as noun, either meaning 'emperor' or 'force'. In all these cases (except Gñaḥgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan's collocation), a case marker would be missing, either for marking the agent or to derive an adverbial phrase.

   btsan is certainly not related to the above root √*btsa*, but a non-derived adjectival, and thus basically a verb 'be mighty, powerful, violent, strong, etc.'. It cannot refer to the ruler's legitimising attribute *btsanpo*, mainly because the individuating derivational morpheme *-po* is missing. Like the following two words this verb describes the uncontrolled behaviour of Drigum. Since Drigum is already the implicit subject or topic of the preceding clauses, there is also no need for an explicit mentioning, either under his name or under his attribute. The use of stem I (or its neutral equivalent) in its non-finite function, binds correlated or like events closer together and suspends the sequential order as suggested by the linear presentation, giving thus the impression of simultaneity (cf. Zeisler 2004: 355-357). Such constructions are actually instances of cross-clausal group inflection, since the morpheme of the last verb in the row extends over the preceding verb(s).

<9> *yabḥbaŋs pha dguḥdaŋ | yumḥbaŋs tshan gsum*.

Here, again, a compound or, perhaps more likely, two compounds: *phatshan* and *matshan* 'paternal' and 'maternal relative', are split up (cf. also Hill 2006a: 91, n.11, who chooses an interpretation in terms of only one compound: *phatshan*). Somewhat against the text, Bacot & Toussaint decide for a different distribution:

'neuf sujets de son père et trois cousins de sa mère'. Most probably, the numerals are not to be taken literally.

<center><10> *druŋ-phod*.</center>

Cf. Bacot & Toussaint, who translate this clause as indirect speech: 's'ils oseraient … le traiter en yak'. The word *druŋ* is not attested as verb or adjectival, but only as noun or postposition. Haarh's translation 'Are we equal in prudence to the Yak?' (p. 402), based on the adjective *druŋpo* 'prudent', does not really fit the context (are yaks really wise animals?). Nor does it fit the grammar of the verb *phod*₂ 'come up to, be nearly equal in worth to', which requires a locational (*ladon*) case marker (cf. JÄK). Wang & Bsodnams Skyid 1992: 34 emend *g.yogdu* for *g.yagdu*, which apparently is intended to yield the meaning 'dare you to fight [us] in front of the servants (as witnesses)?', but is completely against the syntax (the postposition should take the form *g.yoggi-druŋdu* or g.*yogdruŋ* and should precede *dgraru rgal-phod*). Hill (2006a: 91, n. 12) suggests a similar inversion: "I wonder however if it could be odd syntax for *g.yagdu druŋ dgraru rgal-phoddam*?" (transliteration adjusted). An alternative interpretation of *druŋ* as an archaic form of *ruŋ* 'be fit, suitable' (for a possible alternation *rV ~ ḥdrV*, cf. Sprigg 1970: 16-17, Hill 2005) is ruled out by the subsequent modal verb *phod*₁ 'dare, be able'.

   Dotson (2009: 114, n. 268) renders the whole passage not very literally as 'who dares serve as an enemy and take the role of the yak'. It is certainly possible that the one who is intended to take the role of enemy and yak is the vassal, although I would have thought that Drigum in his folly assigned the two roles to himself. My translation keeps the (intended?) ambiguity. It is, however, not without some circularly that Dotson arrives at his interpretation. He suggests "that the Btsan-po's relationship with the yak may be described as one of ritual combat". "This sentiment" would also be "apparent" in the present case. A similar idea is followed by Hazod (2000: 219), who argues that the "condition of the sacral power of the ruler" would be "measured in terms of equality" with the "paternal yak", which would constitute an "image for the stability of the throne". A weak Grigum would have been compelled "to call his equivalence in question in the course of a royal hunt". I am unable to identify any hidden reference to a royal hunt in this passage. Nor does the subsequent showdown have any resemblance with a hunting scene. As for the notion of 'equivalence', this is based solely on Haarh's wilful interpretation, but not on a close reading of the text.

<11> *ralgyi*.

According to Hill (2006a: 91, n. 14), this has to be "read" as *ralgri*. There is no need for an emendation. The CT clusters velar plus alveolar trill are regularly palatalised in various Amdo dialects (cf., e.g., Roerich 1958: 21-23). As the form *ralgyi* and the names Šakhyi and Ñakhyi indicate, this feature is of great age. Such forms also demonstrate the great influence of East Tibetan speakers in the Tibetan administration. Some words, such as Balti and Shamskat Ladakhi /raɣi/ ~ /rai/ 'sword', were borrowed even into West Tibetan. In BRGY sub *skadgsarbcad*, the 'New Language Instruction', we find the following remark:

> *ḥbriklog mibdebaḥi brdarñiŋ ḥgaḥžiggi zur dorte kloghdon bdebaḥi yigskad gtanla phabpa dperna dadrag dorbadaŋ myedaŋ ḥgyo žespa medaŋ ḥgro žespa zoryaŋdu btaŋba ltabu |*
>
> 'Some ancient spellings, inconvenient for writing and reading, were cast aside and a more conveniently 'recitable' written language was imposed, for example the *dadrag* was discarded and spellings such as *mye* ('fire') and *ḥgyo* ('go') were simplified to *me* and *ḥgro*.'

<12> *stsol, stsal(d)*.

In this clause, the RECIPIENT-argument, Loŋam, is omitted, but somewhat earlier, in clause v46 (l. 11), the RECIPIENT-argument is explicitly mentioned as *bdagla* 'to me' (the speaker is Loŋam), marked, as expected, with the dative-locative case. In our annotation we thus assigned the standard frame 09a for verbs of transfer, where the RECIPIENT is in the dative-locative case, and did not refer to a possible alternative frame as first observed by Uray (1966: 50). I overlooked the following passages much further down, ll. 200, 221f., 223, 229, 265f., 385f., and 415f. where, as elsewhere in the annals, the RECIPIENT-argument remains in the absolutive (our pattern 35).

> *ḥuŋnas | btsanpo Slonbtsangyis || Rtsaŋ-Bod khyim ñigri ⊥ || Zutse globa ñebaḥi byadgaḥr stsalto ||*
>
> 'Then, the imperial scion Slonbtsan bestowed Zutse the 20.000 households of Rtsaŋ-Bod as reward for [his] loyalty.' (l. 200)

> *slalbo ni | Lhe-Rŋegs stsald || … gsabgsob ni Lho-Rŋegs stsald ||*
>
> 'As for the *sla* and the ?belly fur,[a] Lhe (=Lho) and Rŋegs were bestowed with. … As for the *gsab* and the ?feather cloak,[b] Lho and Rŋegs were bestowed with.' (ll. 221f., 223 Zutse's song of complaint)

ᵃ   In his song, Zutse complains that although it was him who conquered land for the emperor, the Lho and Rŋegs were given the reward. In the corresponding simile Zutse had hunted down a tiger of Monka and a white-breasted vulture or white-tailed eagle (*thaŋphrom ni rgod*) of Yastod and handed over the best parts (*guŋbkros* 'select parts of the tiger' — not the 'killed tiger' as Bacot & al., 1940: 140 and Uray 1972: 21 suggest, emending *bkros* to *bkroŋs* — and *rgodgšog* 'the wings of the raptor) to the emperor, but the Lho and Rŋegs were then given certain valuable items processed from these parts as reward. Bacot & al. (1940: 140), reading *slalvo* (with *wazur*), have taken the compound as being identical with *slabo ~ zlabo* 'assistant, friend' and the names of Lho and Rŋegs as titles given to the 'helpers'. In the context of hunting, however, one should expect parts of the animal being redistributed. This is what happens in the song of Sadmarkar (ll. 415f., see below). In that song, a yak has been killed and its *lbo* and *šog* have been given to the Ša and the Spug as a reward. As there are always two persons to be rewarded, it could be expected that two different items are handed over, but it is also possible that the two persons received the same items. Thus the compounds may or may not be *dvandva* compounds. In any case, we are dealing here with various *hapax legomena*, specialised terms of hunting, butchering, and/ or processing.

Wang & Bsodnams Skyid (1992: 83, n. 223), reading *slalvo* (with *wazur*) interpret the compound as 'lungs and intestines'. The identification of *lvo* as 'intestines' is given also in TETT with Btsanlha as source. Admittedly, here and in l. 416, where, in the song of Sadmarkar, the same word forms part of another compound: *lbošog* (see also below), the labial is rather small and lacking the top bar, quite in contrast to other occurrences of the cluster *lb-* in other documents (see epigraphic notes and illustrations θ. ࿇） Given the fact, however, that a *wazur* implies a rounded semi-vowel (cf. Laufer 1898: 307, 1899: 95-96) and thus, apart from representations of Indian loan words, does not occur *with* rounded vowels but *alternatively to* the rounded vowel *u*, as in *rwa ~ ru* 'horn' or *grwa ~ gru* 'corner', we should not expect here a combination with the *wazur*, except the word is actually a loan [°-*lu̯o] (from Chinese?).

'Lungs and intestines' could hardly have been a reward to get envious, and the inter-pretation would also not really fit to the suggested meaning of the second reward, the 'feather cloak' (*gsabgsob*). If, like in this latter case, the compound should not designate two separate items, but only one (handed over to each person), one could think of another textile with twists or braids (*sla* for *sle*; perhaps a particular weaving technique) com-bined with the tiger fur. As Matisoff (2003: index, p. 599) indicates, there might have been a proto-Tibeto-Burman word **s-la* 'trouser'. But in both cases, the order of the compound elements should be inverted. The same holds if we would emend *sla* to *slag* for *slagpa* 'fur coat'. Uray offers the meaning 'thin' for *sla-*, disregarding, however, the fact that this meaning is associated mainly with liquids (in the case of *slabo* and *slamo*) rather than with solid things, for which *phramo* might be more suitable.

The Žaŋžuŋ dictionaries are of little help. *sla* is given with the meaning 'earth' in ZhNN and ZhEH (in the latter only in combination with *gži*) and as 'moon' in ZhEH. A derived form of this word, *slas*, is listed in both dictionaries with the meaning 'earth', in ZhNN additionally with the meaning 'thigh'. The latter meaning is attributed to the form *slad* in ZhEH. One might conclude that *sla* could perhaps have had the meaning 'thigh' as well. But are tiger thighs of any value? I would have expected claws instead.

lbo might be related to *sbo* 'the upper part of the belly'. This is not a very common sound change, but the verb *sbos* 'swell' is, in fact, pronounced /lbos/ in a few Lower Ladakhi dialects, otherwise /ɣʙos/ in Balti or /rbo/ in Leh and Nubri, and as /ʁu/, /ru/, /ri/, /bu/, or /we/ in various Amdo varieties. The Balti form as well as the first of the Amdo forms would suggest a classical correspondence **dbos* (cf. CDTD). If we allow the same correspondence here, we would get *dbo*, for which only JÄK gives 'the belly side of the

fur'. This solution is also suggested by Uray (1972: 21, n. 34; reading *lbo*) without any explanation for this choice. While BRGY indicates that the spellings *dbo* and *sbo* are variants in the case of *dbo* being a lunar constellation, TETT also gives the meaning 'high' for *sbo*, which does not seem to fit. See also the further discussion in the context of the song of Sadmarkar below.

Siberian tigers, generally having a fuller fur than other tigers, have considerably longer hair at the belly (http://de.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tiger). This may not hold, however, for the Southern Tibetan (Mon) tiger, but in general the hair at the belly, and particularly between the legs appears somewhat longer and perhaps softer, as judged from some photographs. Since there should be some relation between the *lbo* of a tiger and that of a yak, I should think, that the word refers to some longer hair at the belly side. If the reading 'thigh' for *sla* would be correct, the compound might perhaps refer to the softest part of the fur, at the junctions of belly and thighs.

[b]   While *gsab* as a verb means 'fill, stuff', *gsob*, which is obviously related, has also the connotation of something 'fake, put around oneself or stuffed out' (cf. TETT). The compound could thus well refer to a stuffed animal, but if two different parts are meant, one could think of the skin as the outer shell, and the bones, meat, and intestines as the stuff inside. But the problem with this interpretation is that only the wings not the whole body were handed over to the ruler. According to Wang & Bsodnams Skyid (1992: 83, n. 226), the meaning of the compound would be something like a feather cloak (*sputhullu*; cf. the entry for *sputhul* in TETT, where it is described as a kind of winter cloak with long hairs). Such a cloak could well correspond to the above definition of *gsob* alone. Uray (1972: 21 with n. 35) translates *gsabgsob* as 'payment', taking *gsab* as an echo form of the verb *gsob* with the not all-too-common derived meaning 'return, repay' (as this is based on the meaning 'heal (one's debts)', it is also not clear whether it would be applicable in the context of giving a reward). I cannot avoid the feeling that here as above and below we are dealing with some kind of textile insignia.

At the end of this song, one can further find an apparently incomplete sentence:

dbupyiŋ ni grobola | thama ni g.yagis bskord | Zutse ni stsallags-kraŋ[a] |
'As for the ?granaries [of] ?Central Phyiŋ,[b] their environment (lit. rim) is surrounded with yaks/ As for the head-felt [that is, a kind of cap worn (only) by the ruler],[c] it [is] dappled/ of reddish grey and as for [its] brim, it is edged with ?(precious) fur/ is surrounded ?with yak [applications].[d] As for Zutse, should he not be bestowed [something/ ?the ruler's hat]?'[e] (l. 229)

[a]   Apparently an OT variant of CT *graŋ*, a kind of question marking auxiliary.

[b]   Bacot & al. (1940: 141) and Wang & Bsodnams Skyid (1992: 83, n. 234) take the phrase *dbupyiŋ grobo* as a place name. According to the latter, *Dbu-Pyiŋ* would refer to Phyiŋba Stagrtse of the Central Horn (*Dburuḥi Phyiŋba Stagrtse*), a quite problematic reading, since the division into horns can hardly have existed at the time of Gnamri Slonmtshan, to whom Zutse complains. They further interpret the word *grobo*, which is usually listed with the meaning 'reddish grey' or 'dappled' as *baŋmdzod* 'granary'. This is most probably based on the word *gro* 'wheat', but seems to be an *ad hoc* solution. A further problem with this interpretation is that the case marker *la* at the end of the first line cannot really be accounted for. The relation between the granaries and their envi-

ronment should have been expressed by a relational (genitive) marker. R.A. Stein (1962: 119) thinks of a 'beginning', but cannot make sense of the rest of the line.

[c]   One could think of a high rising conical cap as worn by Saka nobles. Such caps had applications of gold foil or (gilded) wooden animals, cf. particularly Samašev (2007: 166, fig. 9; there were also simpler caps as, e.g. represented in Molodin & Polos'mak 2007: 144, figs. 10.11), but one could equally think of applications out of felt or other materials. A coin of the Parthian ruler Sinatruces (ca. 77-70 BCE) shows the ruler wearing a *tiara* or helmet 'surrounded' by stags "in acknowledgment of the help he received from the nomadic Sacaraucae (Sakas) in his successful struggle for the throne" (Lerner 2009: 86 with fig. 6 on p. 85).

[d]   The reading '(precious) fur' would be in need of an emendation *g.yaŋ* (or rather *g.yaŋlugs* or *g.yaŋži*) for *g.ya(g)*. I am, of course, not very happy with this *ad hoc* solution, but a cap or any other headdress could hardly be surrounded by real yaks. Yak hair or fur also does not seem to be a suitable material. I do not really think that the text refers to yaks as decoration, but this might perhaps be the best alternative solution. The first part of this translation corresponds roughly to Uray's (1972: 22) suggestion: 'Though at first the felt is gray (= raw?)', which is then continued by 'at last it is rolled by the yaks', supposing that *skor* 'surround, encircle' could be synonymous to *sgril* 'roll up'. This is quite impossible, even more so because Uray's interpretation of *dbupyiŋ* as ordinary 'felt' overlooks the honorifying element *dbu*, by which the felt should belong to the ruler — and should be related to the ruler's head (honorifying elements are always chosen in relation to an appropriate body part; ordinary felt in the possession of the ruler would most probably have been **p(h)yagp(h)yiŋ*). Actually, Zutse seems to be asking for nothing less than the *crown* of the ruler. This would also explain, why Gnamri appears to be quite embarrassed and looks for one of the Lho or Rŋegs to give an adequate reply. As the situation is tense, they prefer to remain silent.

   As the case may be, despite the problems mentioned, both, Uray's and my reading would at least have the benefit that the sentence would no longer lack an item to be granted: the empty argument in the third line would refer back to the 'felt' or 'head-felt' of the first line.

[e]   Bacot & al. (1940: 141) as well as Uray (1972: 22) take Zutse to be the actor, but they apparently overlook the honorific character of the verb *stsal*, which implies that something is bestowed by a high-ranking person upon a person of low(er) status. *lags* is likewise the honorific form for the future tense auxiliary *yin*, ideally following a verbal noun (the mere stem might have been used here *metri causa*). Zutse's own act of giving is accordingly rendered more modestly as *phyagtu phul* 'offered into the hand [of the ruler]'. R.A. Stein (1962: 219) mistakes *kraŋ* for *greŋ* and translates, quite against the syntax (adverbs or converbs cannot follow the verb that they are supposed to modify): 'Debout, Sutse fut gratifié'.

… *butsha gaŋ ruŋba gchig || gsergyi yige myichadpar stsaldpar bkaḥ | stsalto ||*

'… decreed that … whichever son it might be, [he] would be bestowed the golden insignia unremittingly.' (ll. 265f.)

ḥbaŋskyi-naŋna | Dorte Pyugtshams Steḥdzom dpaḥbaḥi mtshanmar | stagi thogbu stsalto ||

'Among the subjects, [the men of the thousand districts of] Dorte, Pyugtshams, and Steḥdzom were bestowed 'tiger tops' as insignia of bravery.' (ll. 385f.)

rurgyus ni Ldoŋ-Toŋ stsald | šalko ni Lhe-Rŋegs stsald || lbošog ni Ša-Spug stsald ||

'As for the horns and ?intestines/ ?sinews[a] [of the slain yak], Ldoŋ and Toŋ were bestowed with. As for the flesh and skin,[b] Lhe (i.e., Lho) and Rŋegs were bestowed with. As for ?the floating belly hair (the belly hair like wings),[c] Ša and Spug were bestowed with.' (ll. 415f., song of Sadmarkar)

[a]   Bacot & al. (1940: 156) translate this as 'la fibre des cornes', but I am not sure I understand what they mean by this. One could have expected that the text starts with bones and sinews, but the first should be *rus* and the latter, like fibres, should be *rgyud*. Another possible translation would be 'horns and sinews', as suggested by R.A. Stein (1961: 25), Macdonald (1971: 266), and Uray (1972: 24), with the same problem concerning the second part. Finally, one could think of 'horns and intestines' (*ru* plus *rgyu(ma)* plus collective marker *-s*). The interpretation depends somewhat on the question whether any of the parts given away is perceived of having value. In the context of hunting, it is to be expected that the participants get some valuable reward. In the case of meat and skin, the second gift, the value is beyond doubt, and so possibly also the first and the third gift could be of value. Most probably the value is increasing.

[b]   Cf. also R.A. Stein (1961: 25), Macdonald (1971: 266), and Uray (1972: 25). None of them remarks upon the uncommon form *lko*. In a similar context, in the *Tragedy of the Horse and Yak*, IOL Tib J 0731, ll. 116 and 118, Thomas (1957: 27) likewise translates *lgo* and *lko* with 'skin'; and in this case there cannot be much doubt as this item is (to be) cut into pieces (*dreste* (!), *dros*). It seems, then, that *lko* is related to *koba* 'leather'. The Žaŋžuŋ word *rko*, however, is typically paraphrased as *lus* 'body' or *gzugs* 'outer form' (cf. ZhEH and ZhNN). While Hoffmann (1972: 197) points to the fact that *rko* is at least one time also equated with *lpags* skin, ZhNN sub *rkophuŋ maŋthun* 'meat offering' also shows an association with *ša* (*maŋthun*). *lko* might well have been a dialectal variant of *rko*, and the compound *šalko* could perhaps have been a translational compound, simply meaning 'meat'. That the skin was *not* given away to the Lho and Rŋegs would make sense if *lbošog* would refer to the fur and not just to the hairs of the yak as suggested in the translation by Hummel (1994: 169). If so, then perhaps the other compounds might be translational compounds, as well.
     Bacot & Toussaint (Bacot & al. 1940: 156) translate *šasko* (!) as 'viande sèche' in opposition to *šaspug*, which they see as 'viande cuite' (p. 157) or, as they specify in their note 1, as 'viande fraîche', but see below.

[c]   For the element *lbo* see also above. *šog* is most probably the clipped form of *šogpa* 'wing, fin' or 'bundle, group'. Uray (1972: 25) thinks that the notion of 'wing' or 'feather' "in the present case, obviously denotes the long hair hanging on the sides of the yak". I would thus think that we deal here with a *karmadhāraya* compound since it seems unlikely that the hair and the fur were given, if the skin (which is part of the fur) was al-

ready given to another party. Apart from the long hair, there is no specific belly hair that could have been shaved off from the skin. The down wool or *khulu* grows over the whole body, and is usually combed out, not shaved.

Otherwise, if one takes belly to be the meaning of the first element, *šog* should be taken as being related to the verb *gšog* 'split, break open, rend, tear', and thus the translation should be 'parts of the belly'. Wang & Bsodnams Skyid (1992: 87, n. 337) interpret *lvošog* (written with *wazur*) as *ḥbroŋrus* 'bone(s) of the wild yak', but it is by no means clear how they arrive at their solution, particularly in view of their interpretation of *lvo* as 'intestines' in Zutse's song above. Most probably the bones are not the most valuable parts to share with the helpers of a hunt.

Bacot & al. (1940: 157) translate *šaspug* as 'viande cuite' or 'fraîche', but as Uray (1972: 14ff.) already explained, they miss the parallelism of the clauses. *Ša* and *Spug* are infrequently mentioned clan names (ibid.). *Spug*, in addition, can be analysed as *Spu-gu*, 'offspring, man of the Spu clan' (see note 34 below). Most probably it is identical with the form *Spuŋ(s)* that we also find in the name of one of the most important ministers, Khyuŋpo Spuŋsad Zutse or in the name of the Žaŋžuŋ chief Sñašur Spuŋsrye (for the not infrequent exchange of oral and nasal stops, cf. Zeisler forthcoming, chapter 4 § 2.4.3 and Beckwith 2006 for a similar feature in Chinese; see also notes 13, 14, and 35).

Given all these occurrences, one has to differentiate between *stsol, stsal(d)$_1$* with the ordinary meaning 'give, confer to s.o. (hon; private setting)', following the standard frame of transfer verbs (09a), and *stsol, stsal(d)$_2$* with the particular meaning of 'bestow s.o. insignia, rewards (official setting)' with double absolutive as the *standard* frame (35).

Tibetan case marking can serve pragmatic purposes. There is some evidence for the 'unexpected' use of the dative-locative marker for definite and specific PA-TIENTs in case of special emphasis (Tournadre 1994: 645, Zeisler 2006: 73-80). Conversely then, the 'unexpected' non-use of a dative-locative marker may indicate quite the opposite of emphasis: casualness and unspecific RECEIVERS, which are depersonalised, replaceable, and thus, as mentioned in the introduction, rather PATIENT-like.

<13> *dbuḥḥbreŋ zaŋyag*.

The first element would suggest a reading as 'head-ribbon'. Haarh and Hill leave this and the following item untranslated. Bacot & Toussaint render it as 'courroie de chef', Wang & Bsodnams Skyid (1992: 80, n. 131), suggest the readings helmet (*rmog*) or *dmuthag*. Similarly, Gñaḥgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan (1995: 22, n. 8) explains this as a helmet made out of leather and copper (*kodaŋ zaŋslas bgyispaḥi rmog*), a support for the *dgralha* (war-god) to which is added a (set of) helmet ribbon(s) (*rmogthagdaŋ bcaspaḥi dgralhaḥi rten*), or simply as a head ornament, that is, an ornament for the crown of the head consisting of a helmet (*dburgyan rmogdaŋ bcaspaḥi gtsugrgyan*).

As there is some evidence for an interchange of oral and nasal stops, *dbuḥ* might be taken as a dialectal variant of *dmu ~ rmu*, designating a particular tribe, deity or demon, or the realm of the heaven (cf. R.A. Stein 1941: 226-230, Zeisler forthcoming, chapter 4 § 2.4.3 for some interesting oral and nasal doublets, as well as Beckwith 2006: 187 for similar sound changes in Chinese, cf. also notes 12 (c), 14, and 35). Other mythological narrations have Drigum accidentally cut the *dmuthag*, a rope that allows the defunct to ascend to heaven (as a matter of course, it is fastened to the head) and thus he is the first king whose body remains on earth after death, and the first king to be buried. It seems thus not to be too far fetched to assume, that the ribbon, which Drigum cuts according to the request of Loŋam, is exactly the crucial connection to the heaven. Compare the quite parallel form *rmuḥbraŋ zaŋsyag* in Mkhaspa Ldeḥu (ed. 1987: 234). Here, the item in question belongs to the magic tools given to the primordial king before his descent to earth. Linnenborn (2004: 320), overlooking the mostly quatro-syllabic structure of the items given (di-syllabic name plus disyllabic attribute), renders this single NP with two individual NPs belonging to separate sentences: '*rmu*-rope' and 'good copper tools'. While such an interpretation might not be totally impossible in the enumeration of gifts, in our context *zaŋ(s)yag* is clearly an attribute of *dbuḥḥbreŋ*.

Jim Valby (TETT) lists the variant without intermediate *-s-* as a "fabulous numerical figure". Similarly BRGY takes it as a kind of number. According to Dan Martin (TETT) the variant with intermediate *-s-* would be identical, referring to "a specific high number". But he further refers to the word *bzaŋyag*, for which he gives the definition: = *zaŋsyag* = *byurudaŋ rtsernon*, taken from "Karmay, Treasury". As all these expressions would usually occur with the *dmuthag*, he (that is, Karmay) suggests a translation as 'the red cord of *dmu* (?)' or 'a sharply pointed coral (?)'.

The word seems to be of Žaŋžuŋ origin. In ZhEH we find it in the form *zaŋsyag* with the meaning 'coral'. As for the notion of a magic rope or string made of gems or a rope with special colours, this is, in fact, a not uncommon motive in Tibetan as well as in Indian folk or fairy tales (e.g., in the tale of Prince Norbzaŋ in the Khams version published by Magret Causemann, *Füchse des Morgens*, Eugen Diedrichs Verlag 1986, the fisher boy catches a fairy with a lasso made of gems; in the *jātaka* of Prince Asadisa, we hear of a bowstring that looks like a coral, Else Lüders, Buddhistische Märchen, Eugen Diedrichs Verlag 1961, Rowohlt 1991).

For the element *zaŋ* alone, Dan Martin (TETT), referring to Btsanlha, gives the definition *rkyaŋpaḥam sgribpa medpa* 'bare or without defilement/ obstruction' (cf. also BRGY for *zaŋma*). This meaning also shows up in the compound *zaŋthal* 'unobstructed', '(all)-penetrating', and 'transparent' (BRGY, TETT, cf. also JÄK

sub *zaŋ*, where he refers to I.J. Schmidt's entry *zaŋthaldu* 'penetrating'). For a magic connection between sky and earth an attribute indicating the ability of 'passing through without obstacles', more specifically passing through *rocks and walls* (as in one of the examples of BRGY) might be quite suitable.

<center><14> *dbuḥskas stendguḥ*.</center>

The single elements would suggest a reading such as 'head-ladder', qualified as having nine *sten* '?holders' or perhaps something equal to *rim* 'steps'. Bacot & Toussaint suggest the meaning 'gorgerin' (part of the armour or helmet that covers the throat), anachronistically reading *ske* for *skas*. This is followed by Gñaḥgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan (1995: 22, n. 9). Wang & Bsodnams Skyid (1992: 80, n. 132) come to a similar conclusion, suggesting 'breath or life protection, armour' (*dbugsskyob* / *srogskyob* / *khrab*) or *dmuskas*.

It might be simply a kind of auspicious insignia or ornament. Most probably again a reference to the *dmuthag* (the rope that allows ascend to heaven) or, in mythical duplication, a reference to a similar tool, which is likewise made useless by turning it upside down. Cf. again the parallel form *rmuskas rimdgu* in Mkhaspa Ldeḥu (ed. 1987: 234), listed among the gifts for the primordial king immediately before the above *rmuḥbraŋ zaŋsyag*.

It appears as if the ladder was mainly thought to be used for the descent to earth, while the rope would be used for the final ascent to heaven. A ~~reference to the~~ combined ~~use~~ can be found in a Bonpo text:

> *dmuthag gnamnas draŋsbas ḥdzegsskas bzaŋ* /
> 'In relation to the *dmuthag* that hung down (lit. was drawn up) from the sky, the ladder to climb up was good (i.e. the ladder was better than the rope)' (Šarrdza Bkrašis Rgyalmtshan *Legsbšad rinpocheḥi gtermdzod*, p. 225, as cited by Linnenborn 2004: 196 with n. 264).

Concerning the interpretation of the elements *dbu* as *dmu*, Tucci (1955: 200) makes a similar suggestion for the word *dburmog* 'helmet', but he bases himself merely on his preconception concerning the mythical character of the early kings. He rejects the notion of military power connected with a helmet. One could, however, conversely argue that due to the sound alternations the notions of a *dmuḥphreŋ*/*-thag* and a *dmuskas* were only secondarily mystified as heavenly items and were originally derived from some more prosaic military tool or emblem attached to the helmet.

The word *dmu* or *rmu* also refers to an early tribe or clan. In this connection, it is interesting to note that among Xianbi tribes, the word *murong*, referring to a

certain headgear is also used as a designation for particular clans. In this case it may also appear in its shortened form *Mu*. The word for the headgear, again, is considered to be related, via another tribal name, to a proto-Mongolic word for shaman (Molè 1970: 68, n. 5).

<15> *rbala (rva- ~ ru̯a-)*.

See also epigraphic notes and illustrations θ. *rva ~ ru̯a*. Bacot & al. (1940: 98, l. 1), Haarh (1969: 403), as well as the original TDD/OTDO version (cf. Imaeda & al. 2007) represent the word as *rbal*, Wang & Bsodnams Skyid (1992: 35) as *sbal*. The latter suggest an interpretation as 'joined one behind each other' (p. 80, n. 133). Without any comment, Bacot & Toussaint as well as Haarh translate the word correctly as 'horn'. In the newest version of OTDO (as accessed I/2010), the word is given as "rva la" (and all subscripted labials have been changed from "w" to "v").

   The superscripted consonant looks somewhat like the superscripted *s-* in *stendgu*[...]t one line above (l. 15) and in *ḥtabste* just one line below (l. 17), but it lacks the small left lower diagonal stroke of the *s-*. At a closer look, one will further realise that there is too much space between the initial cluster and the following *la*, enough to insert a syllable separating *tsheg*. The final right stroke of the apparent superscript *sa* ends up exactly where one would expect a *tsheg* and the accurate eye can, in fact, perceive a *tsheg* at this point. The stroke apparently resulted from moving the pen too hastily from the base of the letter to the *tsheg* (a similar joining stroke, although much weaker, can be seen in the final *-r* of the first and the subscript *-y-* of the second element of *gsergyi* of the same line). Hill (2006a: 92, n. 16) gives a very condensed summary of this description as if due to his own insight. As mentioned by Hill, the honour for first representing the text (almost) correctly as རྭ་ལ might go to Gñaḥgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan (1995: 17). Unfortunately, the latter does not comment his decision.

<16> *glaŋpo brgyaḥla*.

Haarh analyses the additional locational argument (oxen) as the primary location and the locational argument (horn) as a manner adverb, translating this passage as 'fastened two hundred spearheads like horns upon one hundred oxen', which is somewhat against the grammar (one would have expected locative-purposive case marking in this case) as well as against the intended meaning (the expression would have made sense only if the oxen were hornless).

<17> *glaŋnaŋ ḥthabste*.

The clause is somewhat difficult to analyse. The ~~problem~~ does not get easier in view of the possible alternations in the argument structure of the verb *ḥthab*, *ḥthabs*. The fighting might be represented symmetrically as a collective activity (A *and* B fight) with only one collective argument in the absolutive (our pattern 01). One could expect three asymmetric constructions giving different weight to the PRIMARY ACTOR and the CO-ACTOR; the latter being viewed either as standing in CONTACT, or as a TARGET or PATIENT. 05: the primary actor is in the absolutive, the CONTACTed CO-ACTOR has a comitative marker (A fights *with* B; cf. JÄK); 07: the PRIMARY ACTOR has an ergative marker, the CO-ACTOR as the TARGET a dative-locative marker (A fights *against* B); 08: the PRIMARY ACTOR has an ergative marker, the CO-ACTOR as a PATIENT is in the absolutive (A *fights* B, cf. BRGY, mostly for inanimate items). According to the classification *thadadpa* 'with difference' or roughly 'transitive' in BRGY, the PRIMARY ACTOR should have an ergative marker in all constructions, including that with the comitative for the CO-ACTOR (this would yield our pattern 19), which is rather unlikely.

The whirling up of ashes in the following clause indicates that the oxen with their spears and their sacks of ashes must have got into close contact with each other. This seems to rule out some human agency for the fighting in the present clause. Bacot & Toussaint, followed by Hill, prefer thus an interpretation where the oxen fight against or among each other. Hill (2006a: 92, n. 17) argues that the further context, where Loŋam is said to attack among the haze, does not really support the idea that Loŋam (and/or the emperor) should be the agent of the fighting, but he admits that his solution "may not be philologically justified". According to Haarh, the oxen simply fight. Seen from a technical side, it is not absolutely necessary that the oxen fight each other in order to get the sacks of ashes torn by their lances. The same could happen, if they simply get somewhat to close to each other by being driven together or in a stampede. This even more so, if the ashes were not loaded upon the oxen in sacks, but simply 'put' upon their back, as Haarh translates (however, the little quantity of ashes that could be deposited so, might not yield the necessary haze).

One might think of an interpretation where the implicit agent Loŋam drives the oxen 'inside', i.e., into the forest or — since this evidently goes against the documented meaning of the verb *ḥthab* — where the oxen 'get driven', 'get entangled', or 'huddle together inside', assuming an etymological relation (intransitive or inagentive vs. causative) between *ḥthab* and *ḥdebs* 'drive', lost in CT. In that case, we should assume only a frame with the first argument in the absolutive (possibly 03a). But then again, the absolutive of the noun *naŋ* 'inside' could not be accounted for. Since postpositions can be realised as compounds, by which trans-

formation their case marker is dropped, the best solution seems to be to take *glaŋnaŋ* 'among the oxen' as such compound, constituting a location adjunct, not an argument of the verb. The missing co-actors must then be Loŋam and the emperor.

It would be quite infelicitous to state that the oxen fought among the oxen by using the full NP two times or by even dropping the *first* NP (cf. the corresponding sentences in English; nobody would ever assume that 'they' in a sentence like 'they fought among the oxen' refers to exactly the same oxen). Furthermore, the deletion of an agent argument is much better motivated when it continues a preceding agent, which by virtue of being human is also high on the animacy or empathy hierarchy, than when it continues an argument that although being animate, takes the role of a location (here for the ashes). That the empty argument actually refers to two different previous agents should not be a hindrance. On the contrary, this could be expected in the case of a collective reading. The fact that Loŋam attacks the emperor in the resulting haze is also not really a contradiction to a previous statement that Loŋam and the emperor fought, or perhaps rather started to fight, among the oxen. Nevertheless, there seems to be a passage lacking, describing how, and why exactly, the ashes got scattered.

<18> v65.

While following the translation of Bacot & Toussaint, this seems to be also the linguistically most feasible interpretation. Fieldwork in Ladakh has shown that there is a strong preference to link up an empty argument with the PATIENT argument of the preceding clause. We do also have examples for the somewhat unexpected AGENT ⁓ PATIENT cross-reference relation in contexts of employment and assistance.

Nevertheless, from the perspective of Tibetan prehistory and mythology, monkeys seem to have played an essential role for the self-definition of particular ethnic groups, assuming the role of totems or ancestor-deities (cf. Zeisler forthcoming, chapter 4 § 2.4.2). One could, therefore, think that Loŋam pulled out the monkey from the bosom of god Ldebla Guŋrgyal as a representation of the latter's soul or magical power, and that this deprivation caused the latter's disappearance. According to the later Tibetan tradition, Drigum *lost* his paternal protective deity (*pholha*) by putting a (dead) monkey on his right shoulder (cf. Linnenborn 2004: 205-208), but this might have been a distortion of the original mythical relations due to different religious affiliations. Could not the *pholha* Ldebla Guŋrgyal have manifested himself in the form of a monkey? In this case, Loŋam could have drawn the monkey-god from the shoulder of the king and thrown it into the glacier. But with such an interpretation, the Tibetan sentence

would not be well-formed and the repeated mentioning of the deity and the switch between the deity and the monkey would be at least as irritating as in the following English translation:

> ?? 'As for the emperor Drigum, [the ancestral monkey-deity] Ldebla Guŋrgyal tried to pull him up to heaven, but Loŋam drew the monkey (=Ldebla Guŋrgyal) from [Drigum's] shoulder (lit. armpit), and cast Ldebla Guŋrgyal (=the monkey) into the womb of the glacier Titse.'

An even more annoying problem lies in the fact that according to the text, the duel took place near ~~the Kailash~~ in Myaŋro Šampo, the seat of the Loŋam. This region has been identified with Naŋ (/ Myaŋ) in Rkoŋpo (north of the Rtsaŋpo) and with the more western Myaŋ (/ Ñaŋ), south of the Rtsaŋpo, not far from Mt. Yarlha Šampo. The latter identification has much more likelihood than the former, not only because of the shared place name element Šampo, but also because, according to the text, v197-v202 (ll. 53-54), Myaŋro Šampo is located only a few marshes from the castle Pyiŋba Stagrtse in Yar, apparently on the same side of the Rtsaŋpo. But even in this case, one wonders why Mt. Titse, that is, the Western Tibetan Mt. Kailash is mentioned here — and whether Drigum would have really been sent down the river all the way till Rkoŋpo where he is claimed to be buried. The preceding translators apparently do not see any problem. But even if the episode refers to a fight between supernatural forces, which are certainly not limited to the small radius of human activities, it does not seem plausible that the fight should be connected with some cosmic event distant by about 1000 km. Furthermore, even if the monkey should be a supernatural entity, the text explicitly states that Drigum dies *there* (at Titse) as well. This evidence cannot be brushed away as easily as Richardson (1998c [1989]: 125) does:

> it is unlikely that it was so far in the west. Later tradition sees the site as being in the valley of the Nyang-chu near Gyantse; while the pandit Nain Singh of the Indian Survey found a similar story current near the Dang-ra G.yu-mtsho, [...] but many indications point to the valley of the Rkong-po Nyang-chu.

One could think of several solutions. First of all, as place names are transferable and multipliable, Myaŋro Šampo is not necessarily identical with one of the historical Myaŋ/ Ñaŋ regions. Similarly, the not very telling appellation Titse could apply to more than one mountain, as we can observe in the case of the mountains bearing the name element *Kailash* or *Mustagh*: in all cases, we are

dealing simply with glaciers or 'Ice Summits'. The question could then be, which prominent mountain might be the appropriate candidate?

Lake Yarḥbrog G.yumtsho has Mt. ~~"Gangbzang" or "Gangwa Zangpo" as her consort, his name being understood as "Complete Good". He is described as "a crystal tent piercing the sky" (http://www.geocities.com/Athens/Academy/1605/ geography.html). The name might well have been 'Good Glacier' *Gaŋsbzaŋ(s)*, suitable as translation for a *Ti(t)se* and suitable for identification with the other Ti(t)se, far away.~~ Near the lake, one can also find Mt. Yarlha Šampo (one of the alternative candidates for the descent of the first king, accordingly the dynasty's soul mountain). As a glacier, this mountain could well have borne the name element *Ti(t)se*. This would mean, however, that speakers of a Western Himalayan language had settled in this area before the arrival of Tibetan speaking tribes.

Nevertheless, the reference to Mt. Kailash should perhaps be taken more serious, particularly since it occurs in connection with a deity. In much later times, the itinerary of Stagtsaŋ Raspa (ca. 1600-1645) mentions a Myaŋpo Ridzoŋ, near Dulchu gompa at the Sutlej in the vicinity of Mt. Tise (Tucci 1971: 385, 406 with note 3). It is, of course, impossible to decide which of the many *Myaŋ* place names refer to original settlements of the tribe in question or would have been transferred at much later times with the spread or translocation of (parts of) the tribe.

Further to the east, but arguably still within the mythological reaches of Kailash-Tise, namely as the immediate neighbour of Žaŋžuŋ, we can find, according to the *Catalogue of the Ancient Principalities*, P.t.1286, ll. 7.f., the White Moiety (*pyed.kar* in P.t.1286, var. *phyeddkar* in Dpaḥbo Gtsuglag) of Myaŋro in Rtsaŋ, the ruler of which is described somewhat enigmatically as 'the lord: [called] the Tocharian, from the rulers of Rtsaŋ' (*rje Rtsaŋrjeḥi Thod.kar*),[a] while according to ll. 9f. an obviously legitimate ruler Loŋam Byibro(m).cha (=-tsha?) (var. Loŋam Rdziḥbrom) would reign in Šampo of Myaŋro (var. Ñaŋro Šampo; cf. R.A. Stein 1961: 9, n. 25, Haarh 1969: 241).

[a]   According to Bacot & al. (1940: 83), a tribal name appearing as a princely name would be quite surprising. But the name might be a family, rather than a personal name. Apart from this, the designation *Thod(d)kar* appears also in the name of Gšenrab Mibo's father in the *Gzermyig*. The presence of people in Western Tibet and Western Central Tibet with family ties to the Oxus region and Bactria is not all too surprising. The communication from the Upper Oxus into the area of the ancient Upper Indus (i.e. the Gilgit river) seems to have been quite easy. From there, one could relatively easily reach Western Tibet via Purik and Ladakh. Whether such people were still Tocharians, in the strict sense, or merely kept the memory of a former affiliation in their clan or family names, is another question.

The modification of the ruler's name with a possessor construction including his title appears somewhat unmotivated. It gives the impression as if in an original version more names might have been given or that the name was meant to be exemplary. One might

have expected a rendering parallel to the first entry, l. 7: *Žaŋžuŋ Darpaḥi rjobo Lig Sñašur* / 'The lord of the Darpa of Žaŋžuŋ, Lig Sñašur', but most of the following entries show the same structure: *rje Gnubsrjeḥi Srispa* (l. 9), *rje Skyirjeḥi Rmaŋpo* (l. 10), *rje Dbyerjeḥi Mkharpa* (l. 12)-, *rje Ḥolrjeḥi Zinbraŋtsha* (l. 13), *rje Rŋegsrjeḥi Labraŋ* (l. 14), *rje Draŋrjeḥi Rnolnam* (l. 16), *rje Rkoŋrjeḥi Dkarpo* (ll. 16f.), *rje Mchimsrjeḥi Neḥu* (l. 20). Based on these parallel constructions, it is possible to locate the White Moiety of Myaŋro in Rtsaŋ.

Macdonald (1971: 224, n. 137) thinks that a Myaŋ in western Central Tibet (Rtsaŋ) could well match with the description of Šakhyi's campaign (v197-v199), although she is not able to identify any of these places. One of the most important Tibetan sources for this location is Dpaḥbo Gtsuglag (Karmay 1989: 535, n. 44). If the designation *Šampo* is derived from an original *gšam* 'lower part', as the OT phrase might suggest, this could point to an original political unity of the two moieties or a migration of one of the two moieties.

Karmay (1989: 535), like Richardson an adherent of the Rkoŋpo theory, thinks that the Rtsaŋ theory is solely due to a "great geographical confusion in later works between, on the one hand, Myang in Tsang […] and, on the other, Nyaŋ or Nyangpo, adjacent to Kongpo". The 'great confusion' may, however, result from an intentional con-fusion or blending of different mythologies into one.

That Western Tibet might have been the original place of the conflict is indirectly indicated by the *Bkaḥchems kakholma*, a *phyidar* text of Western Tibetan origin, of course!, and in Ñaŋral Ñima Ḥodzer's *Metog sñiŋpo* (which might thus partly depend on the *Bkaḥchems kakholma*). It is not impossible that the authors were inspired by the Old Tibetan designation Titse to re-locate the narrative near their own Tise, but curiously the mountain name is not mentioned in their version. On the other hand, the narrative differs considerably from the Old Tibetan version, so that it might well have been an independent, although perhaps not indigenous, tradition appropriated by the Yarluŋs 'historians'.

Grigum had been on a military campaign in Kashmir. On the way back, the of-ficers arranged an arrow competition, during which a dispute arose between Grigum and a certain Masaŋs (*Bkaḥchems*, a Lokham in the Stog version *Bkaḥthems* [!] *kakholma*, an unnamed minister in *Metog*) concerning the question who did the masterly shot. A commoner (*ḥbaŋs*) Liŋam (*Bkaḥchems*) var. Oŋam and Loŋam (*Metog*) then took side with the minister (or) Masaŋs.

In all three versions, the animals involved in the fight are water buffalos: *mahe* in *Metog* and *Bkaḥthems*, *chuḥinaŋgi badmar glaŋdmar* in *Bkaḥchems*, that is, bovine staying in water, and since this is not a common behaviour of ordinary bo-vines, these must be water buffalos (cf. also the descriptive name *chur ḥdres* 'mixed into the water' in BRGY and TETT). Linnenborn (2004: 203) takes this phrase literally. Accordingly, the ashes would have whirled up over the water, where her 'cows and oxen' still stay during the battle, but since this would not

have had the desired effect, it is quite clear that *chuḥinaŋgi* cannot be but a defining attribute. (The phrase is actually an ellipsis for something like *chuḥi-naŋla yodpaḥi*; similar ellipsis have also been observed in Ladakhi, e.g. /tshaseaŋni mendok/ 'flowers in the garden' for /tshaseaŋna yotkhani mendok/ 'flowers that are in the garden'.) The apparent colour term *dmar* could be equally misleading, as a *glaŋdmar* refers to a stallion ox (Jim Valby, TETT). *dmar* could also be a remnant of *migdmar*, another designation of the water buffalo (BRGY). The phrase *badmar glaŋdmar*, either for *baglaŋ dmar(po)* 'red, hot bulls' or for *baglaŋ migdmar* 'red-eyed cattle' = water buffalos, reappears in Mkhaspa Ldeḥu, ed. 1987: 245, where it seems to refer to ordinary cattle. Cf. Linnenborn (2004: 199-206) for a synopsis of the four passages. In none of these versions do we find golden lance tops affixed to the horns. Apparently, the original intention got lost, turning this motive of OTC into a blind one.

Neither in Central nor in Western Tibet do we find water buffalos. It does not seem likely that the western tradition simply turned cattle into water buffalos, due to some prestigious influence, since ordinary cattle is common to Western Tibet as much as to her neighbours and to Atiśa's homeland, hence the narreme should have its roots in the distribution area of water buffalos. Unfortunately, I am not aware of whether water buffalos live in the south-eastern provinces of Tibet. They definitely do so in Assam, China, Vietnam, and Thailand. But the fact that only the Western Tibetan tradition speaks of buffalos and that these have been turned into ordinary cattle in the 'official' version speaks against a borrowing from these regions. Water buffalos are also common in Nepal, Kashmir, and, of course, India, whence the narreme might have been borrowed (possibly via the former two regions).

If we have to choose between the likelihood of an 'original' Žaŋžuŋ-Indian tradition or of one of the Žaŋžuŋ languages being originally spoken as far east as Yarluŋs, my preference would clearly be in favour of a borrowed narreme. Tales, and their segments (motifs or narremes), are even more mobile than nomadic populations. At least one thing should be clear: according to OTC, the event did not take place in Rkoŋpo, since Drigum's sons could not have been expelled from Rkoŋpo to Rkoŋpo.

The Western Tibetan narrative could be a mere projection from the early 8th century, when Tibet extended its rule up to Kabul. But if based on older local traditions, it might allow to link the Drigum episode with the mid 6th century (or earlier) Bhauṭṭa incursions into Kashmir, as reported in the Kashmirian chronicle *Rājataraṅgiṇī* (i, 313; M.A. Stein 1900 (1961) I, introduction, p. 78, §76; cf. also Zeisler forthcoming, chapter 4, § 1.4.3). In that case, Drigum could by no means have been a ruler of Yarluŋs, but must have been a ruler in Žaŋžuŋ. As OTC

seems to hint at, Spude Guŋrgyal might have first usurped the rule in Žaŋžuŋ before extending his dominion to Central Tibet.

<19> *gšegsso*.

As an euphemism and combined with *dguŋdu* 'to heaven', this verb typically indicates that a high-ranking person died. This usage is, of course, related to the belief that the first kings returned to heaven upon dying. In this case, however, the god as a representative of the afterworld, that is, the realm of the dead, would literally go to his own sphere of existence. He could thus hardly have died, but must have (temporarily) lost his power and then simply disappeared.

<20> *zaŋs(-) brgyaḥ ~ zaŋs(-) brgyaḥma*, v68. l. 20 and v114, l. 33.

Wang & Bsodnams Skyid (1992: 80, n. 136) suggest reading *sgam* 'box' for *brgyaḥ(ma)*. The expression seems to be a *hapax legomenon*. While Macdonald renders this extremely freely as 'plusieurs cercueils', the translations have 'hundred copper vessels' in both instances, Bacot & Toussaint and Haarh omitting *khasprod*, Hill translating it as 'closed'. One might wonder, then, whether the corpse was cut up in hundred pieces, and each part put separately in a small pot (but the latter could be expected to be a *zaŋsbu*), or whether the whole body was encased in a giant *matrushka*. Whence should all the copper come?

Both interpretations are impossible already on linguistic grounds, because according to the standard word order within complex NPs, the numeral would be misplaced before a further adjective (here *khasprod*). Like other quantifiers, such as the totalisers *kun* or *tshaŋma*, the collective marker *dag*, and the limiting quantifier {*cig*}, and like definite pronouns, numerals (possibly in combination with the latter two items) always take the last position of the nominal group, to which then conjunctions or case markers may be joined. Furthermore, in clause v114 (l. 33) below, the derivative morpheme *-ma* would only allow for an ordinal number 'hundredth' or for an expression of size.

The numeral might have been part of a compound, indicating the volume of the vessel with respect to a — at that time — well-known and thus omissible measurement, a suggestion by Helga Uebach. This is definitely a more preferable reading, and such big vessel could, if not swim, still move slowly downstream with the bed load of a river. Nevertheless, I would have expected an inverted order, *brgyaḥzaŋs, to get the reading 'hundred-unit vessel' (cf. also the discussion of compound structure in note 46 below). One would further not be able to explain the use of the derivative morpheme *-ma* in clause v114 (l. 33). The same objections would hold against a reading 'wide vessel', where the modifying element

rgya, like in the case of the 'wide lake, ocean' *rgyamtsho* and many other such compounds should precede its head.

The non-use of the derivative morpheme *-ma* in the present clause also prevents the interpretation of *brgyaḥma* simply as a non-documented derived adjective 'wide' (actually, one would expect a derivation morpheme *-po* or *-mo*).

One could perhaps think of **brgyama* as designating a vessel 'having hundred [units]', and hence one could think of a *zaŋskyi *brgyama* 'a hundred-unit-vessel out of copper'. As a compound, however, this could only be **zaŋsbrgya* and not **zaŋsbrgyama*, since derivative suffixes belonging to only one of the elements get clipped. In any case, **brgyama* 'hundred-unit-vessel' is completely conjectural, and one might further wonder whether such big vessels would not have been made of copper anyway, so that this specification would have been dispensable.

As we see, the derivation suffix *-ma* and its alternating use and non-use pose some problems. The suffix would be necessary for a derived adjective, such as *brgyama* 'wide' and it should be dropped if the adjective or any other derivation form part of a compound. It is, however, possible that compounds are combined with derivative suffixes, which then operate on the whole compound. The suffix *-ma* can have the meaning 'having, be supplied with', cf., e.g., *zaŋs rubžima* 'pot with for horns (i.e. handles)' or the expression *lcagsluŋma* below. This morpheme is superfluous and may well be dropped when the compound itself is an exocentric or *bahuvrīhi* compound, expressing that something or someone not explicitly mentioned is supplied with the entity mentioned by the compound: the name *Rotkäppchen* (Little Red Riding Hood), e.g., does not refer to a red hood, but to a girl who is wearing it. In our case, the entity in question must then be something that can characterise a vessel. In correspondence with the expression *rubžima*, one could perhaps think of a vessel that *has one hundred zaŋs*, or perhaps *has the size of hundred vessels*. To my taste, this interpretation appears more than strained.

Helga Uebach, however, also pointed to the expression, *lcagluŋma* 'having iron handles' for the massive books that can only be moved with the help of the said handles. Except for the fact that in this case the head noun, namely the particular book title, should always be specified, a compound *zaŋsbrgya(ma)* would have an identical structure, which can be analysed as *material* & *functional item* (& *derivation suffix -ma* 'with'). According to a purely Tibetan reading, the material might be copper (*zaŋs*), but the functional item (*brgya*) poses some problem. It does not seem to be likely that the item in question is simply the numeral hundred, as this would be much too unspecific and, as shown above, the notion of 'hundred units' should be ruled out. Despite the fact that all other possible items should not appear with a pre-radical (seals, nets or any abbreviated Chinese or Indian item), the most likely candidate might then be a seal (or several seals), particularly also

because in later times, graves were sealed off. Cf. also *rgyama* 'a sealed paper, document' (JÄK), lit. 'having a seal (imprint)'. According to Helga Uebach this latter expression does not simply refer to sealed documents, but particularly to 'forbidden' books bearing a seal imprint. To my understanding, then, we might deal here with two rather big vessels (possibly, but not necessarily of copper) joined at the opening (*khasprod*) and bearing imprints of seals at this joint, in order to either prevent an unauthorised opening or to prevent (the soul of) the deceased to escape. The imprints could have been made into copper plaques, perhaps one should think of an engraving in the shape of a seal (imprint).

Later tradition speaks of iron nails, with which the copper vessel is closed:

> *zaŋskyi gaḥur spur bcug lcagsgzer btabs |* (Dpaḥbo Gtsuglag, cited after Haarh 1969: 144, Linnenborn 2004: 157 with n. 65)
> 'Into a copper reliquary the corpse was put, iron nails were driven in.'

There is also mention of one hundred sticks (nails?) which have to be hit on, or driven into, the corpse (or perhaps rather removed?) as recompense for the bird-eyed girl:

> *pha nare rjeḥi spurla tshargyis lcag brgya thampa brdegtu chug zerbala khas blaŋste |* (Mkhaspa Ldeḥu, ed. 1987: 247)
> 'Upon the father's speech: "Let a full hundred [of] sticks be successively (*tshargyis*) hit onto the corpse!" [Ṇarlaskyes] promised this and ….'

> *ma nare sridkyi bu yoŋbaḥi-thabssu spur dela mtshargyi lcag brgyadaŋ mtshalgyi thig brgyadbcu ḥdebssu chug zernas* (Dpaḥbo Gtsuglag, cited after Haarh 1969: 145)
> 'The mother having said: "Together with the coming [back of] a/ the son of the ruling lineage let one hundred ?magic[a] sticks and eighty vermillion lines be driven into that corpse!" ...'

[a] Possibly erroneous for the above *tshargyis* 'by series'; the error might have been triggered by the following *mtshalgyi*. The meaning must have been distorted in more than one point, since the relation between one hundred sticks on the one hand, and only eighty lines, on the other, is not very intuitive.

The Žaŋžuŋ word for 'iron' or metal in general is *zaŋs* (ZhEH). A reading 'iron' instead of 'copper' would also make more sense in the context of clause v221 (ll. 60f.), cf. note 83. However, the expression 'having an iron-hundred' is as infelicitous as 'having a copper-hundred', as it does not really specify what item we are dealing with. It is interesting that in the above mentioned examples

we either have iron nails without a numeral or hundred sticks without indication of the material. It would appear that the Chronicle fused two different traditions, one that talked of iron nails, and one that talked of hundred sticks. The iron nails of the later tradition were apparently used for the same purpose as the implements in the Chronicle, namely to close (or seal off) the vessel, into which Drigum was put. The hundred sticks, on the other hand, appear in quite a different context, and it remains unclear to what purpose sticks (much bigger than nails) should be hit upon, or driven into, a corpse, and why this could be an adequate recompense for a human sacrifice. Perhaps the authors of the later tradition chose the slightly variant spelling *lcag*, because they could neither make sense of *lcagsbrgya* as equivalent to an original *zaŋsbrgya* 'having an iron-hundred'.

In Ñaŋral Ñima Ḥodzer's *Metog sñiŋpo* we find the expression *brgyaloŋ* (var. *rgyaloŋ*) with the apparent meaning *meloŋ* 'mirror' (Linnenborn 2004: 204, n.298). While the element *-loŋ* might indicate the shape of the mirror (or might perhaps correspond to an old proto-Tibeto-Burman word for 'stone', **r-luŋ*, cf. Matisoff 2003, index, p. 669), the first element seems to describe either the colour ('fire-like' > 'reddish') or the material ('fire-like' > 'shining' > 'bronze'), cf. also OTA I (IOL Tib J 0750, ll. 61, 110, 173) *žugsloŋ* 'mirror' (here probably referring to documents; Dotson's 'fire raising [station]', 2009: 674, 691, 709, is more than improbable; *loŋ* cannot have the meaning of 'raise', at best it could be the potentialis form of the intransitive verb *laŋ* 'rise' or of the transitive verb *len* 'take'; a mirror could thus also be interpreted as 'something that is able to take up fire, i.e., to reflect light'). It seems to me somewhat more likely that *(b)rgya* as a synonym to *me-* or *žugs-* 'fire (-like)' in the compound 'mirror' referred to some kind of metal than to the colour.

Helga Uebach further drew my attention to the compounds *rgyagliŋ* 'oboe' and *rgyasta*, an 'axe' used in certain rituals, where *rgya* might likewise refer to the metal parts. But in both cases, and particularly also in the case of the mirror, *rgya* could also have the sense of 'Chinese', which could further refer to a certain type of ornament as in *rgyalcags* (lit. 'Chinese Iron') for *rgyanag lcagsri* 'the Chinese Wall', a kind of meander. If the original notion of our expression was something like a **zaŋs brgyalcags(ma)* 'a metal vessel with meander design', the double occurrence of possibly synonymous words for 'metal' could have been quite confusing and could have led to a haplology (or -graphy) and a reinterpretation of the element *rgya* 'Chinese' as *brgya* 'hundred'.

The problem with this last interpretation could be that the term *rgyalcags* might not be old enough or at least not significant enough to characterise a funeral vessel. Otherwise, I would prefer this interpretation, because it has the least mythological implications and could be explained by a common linguistic accident.

Looking for possible cultural parallels, Helga Uebach pointed to a recent article by v. Hinüber (2009), according to which, in India at the time of the historical Buddha and in the subsequent periods, the corpses of high-ranking persons could be kept for some time in iron vessels, filled with sesame oil. The main vessel was closed or covered with a smaller one. The main purpose seems to have been to prevent the body from decomposition while waiting for a politically more auspicious time for the cremation and the subsequent erection of a *stūpa* (such as the arrival of a heir, p. 54), although the resulting mess might not have been very appealing (p. 51). As for the building of a *stūpa*, it is stated in the *Mahāpari-nibānasuttanta* by Buddha himself that only four classes of persons deserve this honour: a perfectly enlightened Buddha, a *paccekabuddha*, a disciple of a Buddha, and a *cakkavattin* (ibid.). The same might perhaps be applicable to the rather un-usual temporary preservation of the corpse. There is, nevertheless, some evidence that also queens could undergo the same procedure and even have a *stūpa* built in their memory (p. 46, 51).

Such conservation techniques would not have been necessary in Tibet, and most probably it would have been also quite difficult to procure the necessary quantity of oil, and perhaps also of metal in early Tibet. But since this kind of burial was known from a Buddhist context and as suitable for a *mahāpuruṣa* and *cakravartin*, as which Tibetan emperors would understand themselves, it seems to be quite likely that the motive of temporary enshrining a corpse in a vessel, albeit only half-understood, was borrowed from Buddhist India.

<21> v67-v69.

The interpretation that the empty arguments actually refer to Loṇam is corrobo-rated by the parallel episode, clauses v113-v115 (ll. 31-33), narrated by Ŋarle-skye's mother: there Loṇam is the explicit agent of killing and, given the close connection between events indicated by the *lhagbcas* morpheme {*ste*}, which does not without further contextual clues support a subject switch, he is also the implicit agent of the following two actions.

<22> *Chabgžug*.

Most probably this is part of the place name. The meaning, as given in TETT would be something as a 'bathing place (hon)' or 'bathing festival (hon)' (possibly based on *chabžugs*, a monastic summer picnic). Karmay (1989: 535), however, reading *chabgžub* (!), renders this as 'downstream'.

<23> v71.

If the two persons in question were already bearing these names, as all previous translators accept, I would have expected a verbal noun (*btagspa*) but not the *lhagbcas* morpheme {*ste*}, which typically indicates that the event is closely connected with the following one and usually does not allow switching between different subjects without contextual support. Loŋam as an actor is mentioned some lines before as the one who causes the death of Ldebla Guŋrgyal and Drigum and indirectly also as the one who deposes Drigum's corpse in the river. Except for Ldebla Guŋrgyal and possibly some co-acting monkey no other interfering actor is mentioned, which in all likelihood means, that no subject switch was intended here between the name-giving and the banishing (clauses v72 and v73). The latter act can certainly be associated with the agency of Loŋam. If, thus, Loŋam was the agent of the name-giving, this may imply two things:

One possibility is that the names given were thought to be non-auspicious and were literally understood by the author or compiler as 'Stag-Dog' and 'Fish-Dog'. This would further imply that it was not generally known that the element *khyi* was an East Tibetan variant of *khri*, surfacing in so many regal names. The latter element, although unanimously translated as 'throne', seems to be related to the word *ḥkhrid* 'lead', and may thus correspond to the title of a 'Duke'. Together with Byakhri, the 'Bird-Leader', known from later traditions, Šakhri, the 'Stag-Leader', and Ñakhri, the 'Fish-Leader', represent the three realms of the world (Heaven, Middle-World, and Yonder-World, cf. also Haarh 1969, passim). The two orphans would certainly not have received such prestigious names from their foe. On the other hand, it also seems to be somewhat unlikely that Loŋam would have left them alive, if they had already been given such names (at birth or later). They would have been a constant thread to his usurpation.

The second possibility is, of course, that the contradictions: treating the slain foe as *cacravartin* (by putting him into the funeral vessel) and giving auspicious and highly prestigious names to the foe's offspring, indicate that the whole episode was an invention, and, as it often happens in such cases, that it was fabricated without paying attention to consistency.

Although we are certainly not dealing with 'real' facts, it is noteworthy that according to the narrative, Loŋam does not attempt to cut off the progeny of Drigum. In the conflict between Rulaskyes and Rhya, narrated somewhat later, clauses v87-v89 (ll. 26 f.), the winner, Rhya, is said to do exactly that, although eventually one posthumous son, Ŋarleskyes, survives.

<24> *bragg.yaḥbo*.

This is only one of several possible interpretations of a rather enigmatic passage. There are basically three options: *g.yaḥ* or *g.yaḥbo* could either refer to the dogs or to the people who sent the dogs. In both cases the word could be interpreted as *g.yaḥba* 'relative' (BRGY) or perhaps rather 'helper' (cf. JÄK, GShS *yado*) or also as *yapo* 'executioner' (JÄK). However, the word order with the subject following a topicalised location seems to be utterly unmotivated, particularly because that location was not mentioned previously, whereas the apparent subjects in the focus position (either the dogs or the people who sent them) are given (previously mentioned), and should thus either be deleted or found in the topic slot (that is, in the beginning of the clause). I would likewise think that Haarh's translation 'Trembling [*g.yaḥbo*] they passed *Hphaŋpoḥi brag* (the rock at the narrow footpath)' (transcription adjusted) is neither warranted by the word order nor by Tibetan grammar: As a non-finite verb form in a modal sub-clause, one would have expected either a verbal noun *g.yaḥba* or a converb *g.yaḥnas*, which should have preceded at least the location argument of the verb 'to pass'. As an adverb modifying the verb 'to pass' the adjective should have taken the locative-purposive case marker.

   While it is certainly possible that the sentence had been taken out of its context (where the word order might have been well-motivated) and was merely mounted to the preceding one, an interpretation in terms of 'relative', 'helper', 'executioner', or also 'trembling' appears to be rather forced, and it is more likely that the subject was deleted. The expression should be thus taken as a compound. Again there are several possibilities for the second element. *g.yaḥbo* could stand for *g.yaḥ* 'sign' (GShS), *g.yab* 'covert, shelter, overhang' (cf. JÄK sub *yabpa*), or simply for *g.yaḥma* 'slates'. In all these cases, the additional element *-bo* should perhaps be interpreted as a definiteness marker, as in West Tibetan. The marker could have been motivated if the whole expression referred to a then well-known place.

<25> *pho* for *phoba*.

All translations have 'male', leaving it~~, however, open~~ to which of the previously mentioned dogs or persons this might refer. On the other hand, since we are dealing with some kind of oracle here, it is most likely that the stomach of a bird had been examined. This also fits with the description of the location (a narrow path among the rocks). Bird offering for prognostics is described by the Chinese sources Suishu and Beishi as being practised in prehistoric times (or up to the 7th century) in the 'Women's Dominion' (Nüguo) or country of the 'Gold Race'

(Suvarṇagotra) that apparently extended from Hunza through Ladakh into the Changthang and possibly up to Eastern Tibet, cf. Pelliot ~~1963: 694f.~~ as well as Rockhill ~~1891 (2005): 339f.~~ At New Year (at the winter solstice) a mountain fowl is killed, its stomach opened. If only gravel is found, the coming year will be bad, if grain is found, it is going to be prosperous. A reverberation of this technique might perhaps be found in the *Chaŋraps*, the 'genealogy of the beer', from the Ladakhi cycle of marriage songs: various birds are killed in search of the first grain; finally barley is found in the stomach of a pigeon and disseminated for the first time.

<center><26> v78 (or v81) to v86.</center>

Quite apparently, the clauses constitute a mounted citation. The narrative might have been part of a legal document, issued at much later times, bestowing a gratification for the assistance. This would explain not only the first person perspective, but also the use of the singular pronoun. Bacot & Toussaint put these words into the mouth of Loŋam 'la caresse m'a tue', Haarh and Hill interpret them as part of the omen. Haarh, however, interprets the second occurrence of the word *rtardzi* as referring to Loŋam, who then would have killed himself.

<center><27> ḫuŋgi-ḫogdu.</center>

The chronological ordering, suggested by the sequential marker 'thereafter', lit. 'below that', may well be a fiction. But the fiction of vertical order typically replaces a horizontal order, that is, events or persons belonging to different locations, whether contemporaneous or not, are transferred into a sequential order, mostly then an order of parentage. In our case, this would mean that the two events in question, far from being identical, happened, simultaneously or not, at two clearly distinct locations.

   The principle of exchanging a horizontal with a vertical order seems to be inherited from Indian historiographers. Cf., e.g., the Indian section of the *Debgter sŋonpo*, where countless dynasties, ruling each in a different region, are associated with each other via a link of descend. For a western reader, this alleged genealogical order stretching over myriads of generations would be completely unbelievable. It would be less so if taken as an enumeration of places where comparatively few generations of rulers are listed (one still would have to eliminate a number of zeros). The same principle can be seen at work in the construction of spiritual lineages (Henk Blezer, p.c., for Bonpo lineages), and it is also visible, at least to me, in the reordering of the prehistoric 'dynasties' from a geographic or pseudo-geographic template: starting with the highest spheres (or the west)

downwards (or eastwards) towards the actual centre of dominion, into a pseudo-chronological order of successions. ~~As the sequential marker itself shows, the spatial notion of *below* suggests itself a temporal interpretation of sequence — at least for speakers in the habit of handling written texts.~~ The replacement of a horizontal with a vertical order may well have been triggered by the substitution of an oral by a written tradition. The side effect of obtaining much longer genealogies may, nevertheless, have been most welcome.

<28> *Rulaskyes*.

Bacot & Toussaint translate this name as 'né de la corne', obviously influenced by the later Tibetan tradition of a boy being born as a lump of blood, which his mother deposits in a horn. Most probably this legend had been inspired by the name and not the name by the legend (cf. also Macdonald 1971: 225). One should bear in mind that the Tibetan rendering might well be an attempt to etymologise a name of foreign origin. Hill suggests the translation 'a son of Bkrags, born into the family [of] divine sons', assuming against Haarh (1969: 279ff.) that *ru* 'military division' or 'horn' can be taken to be identical with *rus* 'lineage, family' or 'bone'. According to our discussions, he further thought that a finite verb is rather uncommon in Tibetan names, and in fact, one could have expected either a verbal noun: **Rula-skyespa* or a compound: **Ruskyes*. But the same objection should hold for the name Ṇarlaskyes, which Hill apparently has no problems to accept as name. He also does not mind that his proposed subordinated clause (born into a family...) is not closed by a nominalised or otherwise non-finite verb form. Given the fact that Old Tibetan names are not necessarily *Tibetan* names, and that names have their own logic or structures, the use of finite verbs forms in names (a topic yet to be researched) is not necessarily a violation of Tibetan grammar.

R.A. Stein (1959: 302: n. 22) has aptly pointed to the possible epic dimension of this name. In fact, in ~~the~~ later tradition~~s~~, Rulaskyes, when born, bears all signs of a future Universal Ruler. This is~~, however, a~~ ~~blin~~d motive, since Rulaskyes does not become ruler himself (except in one minor tradition, the *Bkaḥchems kakholma*, where (Ḥbroŋgi) Rulaskyes *is* Spude Guŋrgyal, cf. Linnenborn 2004: 127f.), but remains in a subaltern position, at best becoming minister. Such epic traits are completely missing in OTC, and the only indication of a special status may be seen in Rulaskyes' title *lhaḥi bu* 'son of the god(s)'. This is, however, a common attribute of nobility and not very telling. It would merely indicate that Rulaskyes is of royal blood. In the case of Rulaskyes, I do not see any link with the epic, but the narration concerning his 'double' (?) Ṇarleskyes bears traits of epic folk-lore: the refugee-child deprived of his father, the quest for the truth, the

recovering of the ruler's (father's?) corpse, and possibly an act of revenge, here again ending in a blind motive, since Ŋarleskyes does not become ruler himself and is usually not involved in the revenge. The motivation for integrating these narremes remains unclear, particularly in the later tradition. Only the author(s) of the *Bkaḥchems kakholma* drew the obvious conclusion.

<center><29> *Rhya, Rhya-*.</center>

A Žaŋžuŋ-ian dynastic name and/or title (cf. also OTC ll. 399-433: Lig Myirhya, the last ruler of Žaŋžuŋ, and Rhyelig, a ruler or official in Ñimobag mentioned in M.Tagh. c, iii, 0019, Thomas 1951: 293). It seems to be related to the Tibetan place names *Rgya* and as a title it seems to be related to the Tibetan verb *rgyal* 'win' and the corresponding title *rgyalpo* 'king' (cf. also Hummel 1994: 166, n. 14). Note that while final *-l* is pronounced in all Ladakhi varieties, in many (though not all) Ladakhi dialects, the word for king is /gyapo/, apparently going back to a form **rgyapo*). The form *rhya*, on the other hand, might represent the first step of a sound change attested in Zanskar, where the cluster *rgy-* turned into /ɦj-/, thus /ɦjafo/ *rgyalpo* 'king'. An early attestation of this sound change might be found in the word *yalzugs* of the OT contracts, being, according to BRGY and TETT, an old form of *rgyalbtsugs*. This word, however, is not listed, but we can find *rgyalḥdzugs* 'bet' (for the somewhat unexpected use of stem I for an activity instead of an agent, cf. the discussion in notes 54 and 55). In the contracts, the word *yalzugs* is used in the sense of 'forfeiture or penalty [for breach of contract]' (Takeuchi 1995: 143). The element *-zugs* could then be related to the inagentive verb *zug*, indicating here that the 'stake' or penalty is not paid in advance but establishes itself automatically in case of a breach.

It is interesting to see that while a Rhya is the antagonist of Rulaskyes, a man of the Rhyamo clan is instrumental in the murder of Loŋam and thus loyal to Drigum. If Rhya and Rhyamo were related, this could indicate that Rhya as a vassal or ally of Drigum was first of all not antagonistic to Drigum and secondly not identical and not even related to Loŋam. However, it does not follow with necessity that Rhya and Rhyamo are identical (as Macdonald suggests) or merely relatives, the similarity of the names might be rather accidental. Nor does the Rhyamo episode need to be related with the history of the Tibetan rulers. If one compares the contradictory accounts of the later traditions (cf. Linnenborn 2004: 198-206), it becomes quite evident that the figure of Loŋam was merely built up as a scapegoat and has as much to do with the death of Drigum as the knife (*gri*) with the latter's name. Loŋam's name might well have been chosen retroactively to give the massacre of the Loŋam (and the usurpation of *Loŋam's* throne) a semblance of legitimacy.

That the later Tibetan historical tradition fused the two narrations or rather suppressed the Rulaskyes-Rhya episode (in order to redefine Rulaskyes as Drigum's son) is by no means an indication for its identity with the Drigum-Loṇam episode, as Haarh (1969: 156) suggests and many authors still think possible (cf. Hazod 2009: 187; here identifying Rhya "with Rgya, a well-known lineage from Myang-stod (with the plain of Brgya-grong (SW of Sham-bu …) as one of the main settlements of the lineage …)").

<30> v67.

It remains somewhat questionable whether this literal meaning is, in fact, the intended meaning. While the translation tries to do justice to the text, it appears to me as if some linguistic accident had happened when mounting this passage. Macdonald suggests to interpret the compound *phatshan* simply as 'clan', but then it would be even less comprehensible why the sentence is formulated in such a complicated way.

<31> *pho.lo*.

Cf. Hill (2006a: 93, n. 22). Dan Martin in TETT quotes Btshanla with the paraphrase *rgyunordaŋ phyugszog thamscad ḥphrogpa* 'the robbing of all material wealth and livestock'. Most probably Wang & Bsodnams Skyid (1992: 80, n. 137) derived their definition *khyimnaŋgyi dŋospodaŋ norphyugs thamscad phrogste ṅṅyerba* / 'having forcefully taken away all cattle, property and wealth of within the household' from the same source. These suggestions are certainly based on the context, but do not explain the phrase, which literally would mean 'male year', as proposed by Bacot & Toussaint (Bacot & al. 1940: 125, n. 4) and Gñaḥgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan (1995: p. 22, n. 11: *ḥbyuŋḥgyurgyi duslaḥaŋ ḥjugpa ḥdra* 'like the time specification (lit. entry relating to the time) of a happening'). In his note, however, Gñaḥgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan reads *phola*, which he alternatively paraphrases as *phula* 'in the upper part of a valley' (the note is misplaced before note 12 on *dudsna* and is missing in the text, hence the difference in the numbering, noted by Hill 2006a on various occasions). An indication of a location after a verb would be against Tibetan syntax. The specification of a year only by the attributes 'male' or 'female' is impossible, and since the gender affixes seem to have been introduced together with the five elements for the 60-year cycle, their usage in a text of the 9th century or earlier (as in the source document) can likewise be ruled out.

One could think of a wrong segmentation instead of *pholo* or *phol.lo*. BRGY, BTSH, and TETT list *phol* only as an old word for 'understand, perceive, be

aware'. ThDG, by contrast, lists this verb, for which he gives the stems I: *ḥphol*, II: *phold*, III: *phol*, IV: *ḥphold*, as 'break through the difficulties of knowing', but in his Tibetan paraphrase, the word is also given as being synonymous to *rtol* and *ḥbigs*, both meaning 'pierce' (it seems likely that the standard interpretation *rtogs* is due to an error in transmission for *rtol*). Haarh (1969: 453, n. 17) suggests a relation to *dbol*, *ḥbol*, and *ḥbal*. *ḥbal* and its stem IV *ḥbol* have the meaning 'part, dress hair etc.' (JÄK) or 'pluck, card (wool)' (BRGY). This can certainly be ruled out as can *ḥbol-* for 'soft' or 'cushion'. DYGB gives a somewhat different meaning for *ḥbal*: 'pluck out from the root', which does not really correspond to what is done to the cattle.

   The form *phol* could perhaps also constitute stem II of a hitherto unattested verb, with the ideal strong causative paradigm 1a (cf. Zeisler 2001: 188) I: **ḥbol* or **ḥphol*, II: *phol* (< **b-pol*), III: *dbol*, IV: **phol*, of which, strangely enough, only stem III would have survived. *dbol* is given in JÄK with the meaning *rtol* 'pierce, perforate', in SCD as 'open the closure of a pond', similarly in ThDG (the synonymous collocation *rdziŋ rtol* 'pierce a pond', i.e. 'let the water flow out of a pond' is attested also in present-day Ladakhi). In TETT the meaning is given as 'extract, squeeze out', and in BRGY the verb is described as an old expression for the verbs 'make move, migrate' (*ḥphobar byedpar*) and 'pour out' (*gšo*).

   If the interpretation of BRGY is correct, one would see here an old causative derivation from the verb I: *ḥpho*, II: *phos* 'change place, shift, migrate', following the strong causative paradigm 1a, but with the help of an additional final *-l*. As this would be quite exceptional, one could think of an original suffix *-d*, which typically operates only on stem I, but might have been generalised for all stem forms (in order to disambiguate the meaning 'make move' from the meaning 'pour out'). The merging of final *-l* and final *-d* into /-l/ is attested in modern Amdo dialects (cf. Roerich 1958: 21). Its occurrence in the present word would indicate that, like other Amdo phonological features, the merger could have been of considerable age. But perhaps one should better think of an error in transmission (or a conflation with the verb 'pierce') and emend *phoso* (*phos.so*) for a likewise non-attested, but regular transitive causative derivation I: **ḥphod*, II: **phos* (< **b-pos*), III: **dbo*, IV: **phos* 'make migrate', replaced by the verb of the weak paradigm 2a: I/III: *spo* II/IV: *spos* for the quite obvious reason of partial homophony with the non-causative verb form as well as with the verb I: *ḥbo*, II: *phos* (< **b-pos*), III: *dbo*, IV: *phos* 'pour out'.

<32> *dudsna*.

Most probably a compound derived from *dudḥgro* 'quadruped' (lit. 'what is going in a bent manner') and *snatshogs* 'all kinds' (cf. also Haarh 1969: 403 with n. 17,

p. 453; but cf. also clauses v207, l. 56 and v225, l. 62, where *dud* is used alone for the meaning 'stooped one, quadruped'). According to Uray (1966: 250 ff.) this compound must refer here to the essential livestock. Gñaḥgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan (1995: 22, n. 12), suggests to read *dudna* instead, which he interprets as 'in the house' (*khyimna*), based on the compound *dudtshaŋ* 'household'. Together with his interpretation for *pholo*, this does not yield a grammatical and meaningful sentence, and the emendation is useless.

Against the interpretation of *sna* as a clipped form of *snatshogs* in a compound, Hill (2006a: 93, n. 22) objects:

> I perfer [!] to see it as meaning 'nose' and here used as a classifier word for cattle as synecdoche, in part because it seems likely that no cattle would have been specifically spared.

This analysis does not account for expressions such as *darsna lŋa* 'five sorts of silk', *rinpochesna bdun* 'seven kinds of jewels', *šiŋsnaḥi dudpa* 'smoke of several kinds of wood' as well as the compounds *snatshogs*, *snamaŋ*, *snatshad* 'of every sort', etc. (cf. JÄK sub *sna*, 5). When *sna* is used in combination with numerals, one could perhaps describe it as a (kind of) classifier, but we have no prove that the word used in such contexts originally meant 'nose' or is even distantly related with the word for 'nose' (in the case of mere monosyllables, often resulting from originally much longer word forms, it cannot be taken for granted that the look-alikes always have a shared etymology), nor is there any prove that its application was originally restricted to animals.

In his review of Bacot & al. (1940), R.A. Stein (1952: 82, n. 1) lists several misprints, and in this connection, he also suggests to read the present *dud* as *duŋ*. It is true that compared with the preceding *da*, the final letter looks more like a *ŋa*. But both consonants show some variation in their shape, which even allows a certain overlap, cf. in the beginning of l. 29 the very similar letters *da* and *ŋa* in *pha yodna ŋaḥi pha gare*. While the lower stroke of the *da* in *dud* should be more slanted and more convex, and particularly somewhat longer, similar *da*.s, only minimally more prolonged or crooked, are found in l. 12 *gched*, *phod*, l. 15 *gchad*, l. 24 *bsgyud* (or *bsgyuŋ*?; the latter form is likewise not attested in the dictionaries), *khrid*, l. 29 *yod*, l. 31 the first *khyod*, indicating that the letter in question, which is more slanted and longer than an average *ŋa*, might be at the extreme limit, but still within the limit of *da*-forms. Apart from this, a reading *duŋ* 'conch' would not really fit into the context. See also epigraphic notes and illustrations *dud*.

<33> *chuŋba*.

Cf. Macdonald and Gñaḣgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan (1995: 22, n. 13). Demagnifying adjectives, such as 'small, low (in rank or merit)' are typically used for females, cf. *skyedman* 'woman' (lit. of low birth) vs. *skyebo* 'man, person' (lit. of birth), similarly *bud-med* 'girl, woman' < **bu-dmad* 'low offspring'. Bacot & Toussaint and Haarh translate *chuŋba* as '(male) child', however, as Hill (2006a: 93, n. 23) correctly comments, a child of Bkrags would have no land of his or her father to return to. Moreover the *chuŋba* returns to the land of her father and brother (*phamyiŋgi yul*), where the brother is referred to by a designation (*myiŋ(bo)*) that is only used in relation to women (cf. JÄK sub *miŋbo*). The term /miŋbo/ is still used in Ladakh with reference to a female's brother, irrespective of his relative age, while the compound /miŋšriŋ/ 'sibling' is used by both genders with respect to both genders. See also Yamaguchi (1970: 102, n. 25), although otherwise rather crudely making Rhya a wife of Loŋam.

<34> *Spus*.

This is the collective form of the clan name Spu. For the collective suffix *-s* cf. Denwood (1986). Interesting examples for this suffix, appearing in the same syntactic context as the collective marker *-dag*, are found in RAMA D6: *g.yubrag sŋonpo-s sprelpa n[i]*, 'as for the arranged (lit. joined, combined) (collective of) green-blue turquoise rocks' and E3: *neḣuseng sŋonpo-s ni springyi* [! for ablative] *mtho* 'as for the (collective of) green-blue meadows, they are higher than the clouds'. The collective marker *-dag* is used in the same way in *nagstshal stugpodag* '(a collective of) dense forests' (D7) and *darzabkyi loma lhubspadag* '(a collective) of wide (?=flittering) leaves of finest silk' (E6).

The Spu (var. Spa) clan seems to have been instrumental in installing the Spurgyal lineage (lit. 'king over/ from the Spu'), the first member of which would be Drigum's 'successor' and 'son' Šakhyi (or Ñakhyi or Byakhri) under the regal name Spude Guŋrgyal (cf. clause v223, l. 61). The name must have been of very high prestige in order to be adopted by the Tuoba elites who took over power in prehistoric Tibet. There might be an etymological relation either with the Supi(ya) or with the clan name Dmu/ Rmu/ Rma (see also below. n. 35), which is also a designation for a certain class of deities (and demonised spirits). In the latter case, *spu* might have been a synonym for *deva* or *lha* (cf. Zeisler forthcoming, chapter 4 § 2.4.3 and § 3, particularly with notes ca. 170, 171). All three translations with an adjective 'excellent' or 'noble' (cf. also Macdonald's "fils 'de qualité'"), based on the CT noun (!) *spus* 'quality', therefore, totally miss the point. In the present clause, they also violate the grammar, since they all do not account for the fact

that the noun *Spus* is followed by dative-locative case marker: *Spus-la ḥgreŋnus-tsam-nas*.

<center><35> *bya*.</center>

I have some difficulties to understand the motivation of parallelising men and quite unspecific birds, even if *bya* was only used to indicate just *any living being*. As it is far from evident that every bird has an overlord, one could have expected some social animal to serve for this simile.

On the other hand, there is some remote evidence for an early homophonous word **bya* with the meaning 'speaker, man', ultimately related to the word for 'human, man' *myi < *rmi ~ *rma < *mri ~ *mra*, the clan names Dmu/Rmu, Rma (< **Mra(o)*), Bra (var. Sbra, Dbra, and Pra), Miao (*Mya/v*), and Phiao (*Phya/v*; see note 80 below for this transliteration), and the verb *smra < *mrao*. The clan name Spu might equally belong to this set of derivations (for the various permutations that link these words: *m <> b/ph*, **mr > smr > rm > dm* and similarly *p(h)r > spr > sp* (*br > sbr*), *Cr- > Cy-*, and the instability of the vowel, cf. Zeisler forthcoming, 4 § 2; for the interchange of oral and nasal stops cf. also R.A. Stein 1941: 226-230, as well as notes 12 (c), 13, and 14 above; for the metathesis of **Nr > rN* and a more general metathesis of *Cr*, *Cl > rC*, *lC* cf. Simon 1975 and somewhat less convincingly 1949: 10-15). The most obvious trace of a former **bya* 'human' might be found in the word *byi-s-pa* 'one out of the collective of human offspring' > 'child', which could be derived immediately or via an intermediate **byeḥu* 'human offspring': **bya* 'human' plus filiation suffix *-ḥu* plus collective suffix *-s*, the latter apparently leading to the loss or fusion of the filiation suffix.

Synchronically, for the compiler of the Chronicle and his source(s), the word most probably signified only 'bird', but it cannot be precluded that some people were still half aware of the underlying word play that must have been at work when the lines were first composed. I suppose that we deal here with an original translational compound *myibya* 'man-man' (later reinterpreted as a *karmadhāraya* or descriptive compound 'man like a bird'), which was split up in accordance with the poetic convention, already mentioned in note 4 above.

It is obvious that as soon as the notion 'speaker, man' was lost, the compound *myibya* had to be interpreted as referring to a hybrid species, half human, half avian. We will have occasion to meet this creature further down, clause v157 (l. 43) with note 46. That we might well be dealing with a meaning shift is also indicated by the contradictory description of the victim in clause v131 (l. 37) and its parallels as someone "who has *human* eyes like *bird* eyes", see note 43 below.

<36> *rjobo*.

Not listed in the dictionaries. All translations have 'lord', according to the context. Quite obviously the word is related to *jobo* 'lord, master'. Less clear is whether *jobo*, and thus also *rjobo*, is etymologically related to, or merely a dialect variant of, *rjebo* 'lord, master' (cf. *roro* for *rere* after clause v209 (l. 57) with note 75 for a similar alternation between *e* and *o*). Only the forms *rje-* (/rje/) and *jo-* (/co/) appear to be attested in the phonetically conservative dialects. The historical chiefs of Ladakh, e.g., are commonly referred to as "Cho" (for /co/ < *jo*). As a trace of a former pre-radical, one could have expected at least a voiced representation or some fricativisation. This might indicate that we are dealing here with a conflation of the two words *jobo* and *rjebo*. The form *rjobo*, however, appears in the online documents in 21 instances (P.t.1084: 2x, 1283: 7x, 1286: 1x, 1287: 10x, and IOL Tib J 1375: 1x), the form *jobo* in 10 instances (P.t.1040: 3x, 1047: 1x, 1136: 2x, 1287: 4x), the form *rjebo* in 4 instances (P.t.1042, 1290: 2x, IOL Tib J 0740), and the form *rjepo* in a single instance (P.t.1285). Except for OTC, where we find an alternation between *rjobo* (10x) and *jobo* (4x), there is no overlap between the forms, which indicates that all three forms are dialectal variants. This is somewhat contrasted by the non-occurrence of *rjo-* and the quite frequent use of *jobo* (20x) and *rjepo* (18x, but no *rjebo*) in the documents of Eastern Turkestan (Takeuchi 1998; incomplete or questionable forms were not counted).

<37> *rteḥucuŋ*.

To my opinion, it is necessary to distinguish between verbal adjectivals that are monosyllabic and may have two stems (more frequently in OT than in CT, e.g. I: *che*, II: *ches* 'be big') and nominal adjectivals that are always derived (whether by a derivational morpheme or via composition) and thus at least disyllabic. Like other verbs, a monosyllabic verbal adjectival may occur as the second element of a compound. That we are dealing here with a compound is corroborated by the spelling *-cuŋ*, since non-first syllables within an intonation unit (word) tend to be de-aspirated. The OT orthography, however, switching between a more phonemic and a more phonetic rendering, is not very consistent with respect to this feature, hence in the preceding clause v103 the text has *-chuŋ*. All translations interpret the phrase as a normal noun plus (nominal) adjective. In our discussions Nathan W. Hill suggested to read the combination *c(h)uŋkha* as a derived form. In that case however, the remainder of the clause has to be translated as 'don't be big', which is certainly less motivated than my 'don't talk big' or Bacot & Toussaint's 'n'aie pas bouche trop grande', cf. also note 38.

<38> *kha madrag*.

All three translators overlook the (intended) parallelism with *kha machešig* in the preceding clause v103, possibly because they think that a prohibition must always be marked with a directive marker {*cig*}. While the marker is not absolutely obligatory in commands and prohibitions (cf., e.g., OTC l. 99 *ltos* 'look!', l. 269 *magtaŋ /* 'Don't forsake!', l. 444 *khus magdab /* '[one] is not to shout', *rtas mabchag* 'the horse is not to gallop'), it is certainly possible that in this special case, the marker got lost when the sentence was taken out of its original context.

   For the compound *khadrag* JÄK has the meanings 'mighty' and 'haughty'; for *khache* he gives a literal meaning 'a large mouth' as well as a figurative meaning 'a person that has to command over much'. Given the antonym *khañuŋ* 'laconic, sparing of words', *khache* should also have the meaning 'someone who talks too much'. In may be noted, *en passant*, that the Tibetan name for 'Kashmir' or Muslims in general: *Khache*, is readily misunderstood as 'loudmouth, braggart' in Ladakh.

<39> *Ŋarleskyes*.

The name has the same structure as that of Rulaskyes. It might well be possible that one name is the translation of the other and the two persons were actually identical. This is what the later Tibetan traditions suggest, which know only of Rulaskyes (-Ŋarlaskyes), making him a posthumous son of Drigum. the version of Dpaḥbo Gtsuglag, the name Rulaskyes is equated with Ŋarsospo (Haarh 1969: 145).

   If one wants to translate Rulaskyes as 'born from a horn', one could translate Ŋarleskyes correspondingly as 'born from the strength/ thickness/ front side/ stalk/ corner'. *ŋar* is the Žaŋžuŋ word for 'corner', in Tibetan it might either refer to the 'front side', to the 'stalk of plants' *ŋarpa*, or to 'strength', cf. *ŋarba* and *ŋarma*. In the version of Mkhaspa Ldeḥu (see be-low) *ŋarpa* is associated with a woollen cloth, and it might be exactly from this context that Btsanlha gets his interpretation *dampo* 'thick' from (cf. TETT, Dan Martin). *-le-* as a variant of the dative-locative case marker is a Žaŋžuŋ form (cf. Haarh 1968: 20). As the variants Ru-las-skyes (*Debther dmarpo*, Haarh 1969: 143-146) and Rgyu-las-skyes (Buston, Haarh 1969: 154) indicate, the dative-locative marker in both names should be interpreted according to its ablative function (for which see JÄK sub *la* IV).

   Mkhaspa Ldeḥu (ed. 1987: 246), who renders the name of this figure as *Rvalasskyes Ŋarlasḥgreŋ Yulabrten* (Grown-from-a-Horn Standing-up-from-the-*Swansdown* Based-on-a-Bootleg), motivates the first part of the second name

(*Ŋar-*) like the first and the last name by the way the yet unformed child was kept: inside a yak horn (*g.yagru*), which again was placed in the leg of a boot (*lhamyu*), and then the child (or the horn or the bootleg) was covered by a thick woollen face-cloth or blanket: *g.yarsnam ŋarpas kha bcadde* (*g.yar* does not mean 'borrowed' here, as Linnenborn 2004: 128 translates, but is a honorific word for 'face, countenance', serving also as a honorifyer, e.g., *g.yarmkhar = skumkhar*, cf. BRGY). While the last name inevitably calls into mind a much later Yumbrtan (or Yumrten), the middle name is also reminiscent of the above clause v95 (l. 28) *Spusla ḥgreŋnus-tsam-nas*, which could be interpreted alternatively as *Spuslaḥgreŋ nus-tsam-nas* 'as soon as Spuslaḥgreŋ was able'. As Mkhaspa Ldeḥu's *Ŋarlasḥgreŋ* demonstrates, the name *Standing-out-among-the-Spu*, would not be completely unlikely, but then, in the above context, one might wonder: able to do *what*? If Mkhaspa Ldeḥu did, in fact, intend a parallel between a *Spuslaḥgreŋ* and a *Ŋarlasḥgreŋ*, it would probably be better to read *Ŋar* as a clan name, as well. Ŋarleskyes could well mean something like 'Born to the Ŋar' or 'Ŋar-Offshoot'.

What is definitely not possible is Bacot & Toussaint's translation 'né de lui-même' (Bacot & al. 1940: 125, n. 6), which disregards that *ŋar* would be an already case-marked form of the pronoun *ŋa* 'I' and that this pronoun does not refer to the third but to the first person. Furthermore, the reflexive meaning 'self' would have been expressed by the pronoun *raŋ*, and the corresponding compound for this 'translation' would be **Raŋskyes* 'Self-born' or **Raŋlaskyes* 'Born to/ from oneself'. Incidentally, *ŋar* is a mirror-inverted *raŋ*, a fact that might have enhanced the misinterpretation.

Bacot & Toussaint's interpretation was largely followed by Haarh (1969: 156), who only corrected the pronominal reference: 'Born from (or by) myself'. For Haarh, this interpretation, although linguistically somewhat "doubtful", would be "most adequate to the real nature of its bearer" (ibid.), which he connects with the realm of the defunct, from which the kings would derive their magic power. In this connection, he reinterprets *Spuskyi bu* as 'son of the corpse', insinuating that the nouns *spus*, *spur*, and *spu* would all signify 'corpse', *spus* being thus "an otherwise unknown derivative" (p. 157). Such metaphysical contemplation must be quite attractive compared to the uninspiring linguistic argument. Or else, it is not really intelligible why we still find Bacot & Toussaint's ungrammatical rendering and Haarh's over-interpretation uncritically quoted as, e.g., in Linnenborn (2004: 135).

<40> *gdod*.

All translations have 'wish' or 'what he wanted'. The verb 'wish, want' *ḥdod*, however, does not have any stem form *gdod*; and such stem form, which would

represent the gerundival stem III 'to be wished', would also not make sense in the context. Wang & Bsodnams Skyid (1992: 80, n. 139) interpret the phrase as 'having a personal interview' (*gdoŋ thugpa*), but what kind of personal interview should a mother and son conduct, particularly after already having started a conversation? Should we think that the following speech is given only secretly? There is no reason why *gdod* (for *gdodma*) should not mean 'beginning' here, since the mother explains everything from the very beginning. For the short form *gdod* cf. TETT and JÄK's citations from Milaraspa.

<center><41> *zaŋs(-) brgyaḥma*.</center>

For the possible alternative interpretations, cf. v68 (l. 20) with n. 20 above.

<center><42> *churlaggi ni dbres*</center>

Bacot & Toussaint translate this as 'celui qui est abîme dans le fleuve', Haarh as 'the destroyed man who is wrapped in the water', Hill (who further renders *tshol* 'shall search' with 'will find') as 'the filth of the destroyed water'. Gñaḥgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan (1995: 22, n. 14) suggests the following interpretations: 'a waterlogged area after recession' (*chubrišulgyi chuḥkhyil*), drops (*thigspa*), 'ice block' (*chabrom*), waves (*rlabs*), or simply traces (*rjes*). He further suggests that the word might be the same as *dbyes* 'magnitude, size, dimensions'. The only entry for *dbres* in BRGY is *dbreskyi ḥtshams*, lit. 'suitable or necessary for *dbres*' with the definition *rgyamtshoḥi rlabs* 'waves of the ocean'. This is not really helpful.

Btsanlha's definition of the *hapax legomenon dbres* as 'water course or canal' (*chuḥi lammam yurba*, TETT) is followed by Wang & Bsodnams Skyid (1992: 80, n. 140) who paraphrase it with *yurba*. The latter reading is certainly out of place, but one could think that the boy is looking for traces caused by a destructive flood (*churlag*). No such flood is mentioned and I am not convinced that the compound *churlag* can be applied to the natural flow of a river. I would also not expect that the boy searches the river course or the traces of a flood. If he followed the course or the traces of the water, one could have expected again the collocation with *gcod*. Furthermore, given the parallelism with *mirlag* in the preceding clause v120, the compound *churlag* should refer to 'one destroyed by water', rather than to 'destructive water'.

Haarh's translation suggests a connection with the verb *ḥbre*, *bres* 'spread (cloth, curtain, or net), wrap up (books or corpses)'. The problem is that the verb seems to presuppose solid not liquid types of wrappings, and even if we allow for a figurative usage, the form *dbres* would imply either a totally different verb

(*dbre, dbres*, that is, 'be dirty') or it would correspond to stem III, the gerundive, 'to be wrapped', in an ancient, but otherwise no longer attested, regular paradigm 1a: *ḥbres (or *ḥphres), II: *phres, III: *dbres, IV: *phres. Furthermore, his translation does neither take into account the genitive nor the element *rlag* 'destroyed'.

As Hill and perhaps also Gñaḥgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan seem to suggest, *dbres* might be related to the adjectival *dbre* 'dirty, bad' (cf. BRGY). As this meaning does not really fit, I would opt for 'remains' (which may or may not be filthy or dirty). The word *dbres* appears also in the compound *dbrebtsog* 'dirt filth' (JÄK, BRGY, TETT), which could perhaps indicate that *dbre(s)* does not simply mean 'dirty', but a particular state, perhaps after being crushed or after having rotten.

<43> *myiḥi myig byamyigdaŋ mtshuŋs*.

Note the contradiction between the *human* eye and its allegedly *avian* features. By ordinary standards of communication and reasoning it should not be possible that our chimaera had at the same time human *and* avian-like eyes (except perhaps one eye was closed from above while the other was closed from below, but this is not really what our text suggests). A more straightforward description could have been *a human being with bird eyes* or a *human being who covers his/her eyes like a bird*. The strange formulation might thus indicate that some accident happened in the course of transmission, as already suggested in note 35.

It is very tempting to think of an avian totem in a pseudo-shamanic prehistoric culture (cf. Linnenborn 2004: 297), underlying the avian features characterising Drigum's substitute and, in later tradition, the primordial king Gñaḥkhri, and even Rinchen Bzaŋpo (cf. Snellgrove & Skorupski 1980: 86). One might also count the apparent parallelism between men and birds in clauses v96-v99 (ll. 28f.) above as further evidence. Gñaḥkhri is additionally characterised by webbed fingers (and, in some traditions, toes), which would liken him to a water bird (the goose as the king of birds, an Indo-European totem?).

But part of the superhuman features of the primordial king, such as the webbed fingers, the long tongue that 'may cover the [whole] circle of the face' (that is, reach the hairline or ears; cf. Mkhaspa Ldeḥu, ed. 1987: 226: *lces gdoŋgi dkyilḥkhor khebspa*; and not, as Linnenborn 2004: 291 renders it, "circles (in form of) tongues that covered his face"), and the full circle of teeth (cf. Linnenborn 2004: 292f.), belong to the 32 main *lakṣana* of a *mahāpuruṣa* and are definitely inherited from the iconography of the Buddha (who is also said to have flatfeet; the statement concerning the teeth shows that the Tibetans not always understood the meaning correctly: the *mahāpuruṣa* is said to have 40 teeth rather than the

normal 32; they are without gaps and equal in size). The webbed fingers, on their part, may simply derive from a technical solution in sculptural art to protect detached fingers from breaking (Bautze-Picron 2008: 179). *Bird eyes* could well have been a misunderstood secondary iconographic feature, developed perhaps in connection with the transition of widely opened eyes to half-closed eyes in the representation of the Buddha, which happened in the 2nd century CE in the art of Gandhāra (cf. Bautze-Picron 2008: 183). The lower lids of Buddha's eyes are quite often very well articulated, which can make the eyes look like half-closed owl's eyes. It should be noted that Gñaḥkhri bears his superhuman features especially in the context of the Buddhist tradition, which makes him an exiled Indian prince, exiled particularly because of his *lakṣana*.s.

If the bird eyes actually stood, *pars pro toto*, for an original bird head, this could lead us also to the mythology and iconography of Pehar, who at least in one tradition has a human body and the head of a raptor (R.A. Stein 1959: 288, referring to Nebesky-Wojkowitz 1956: 102). Pehar was 'invited' to Bsamyas as war booty in the early 8th century, at a time when Tibet was at the height of its power or only shortly after. He served as a protective deity, particularly as guardian of the treasuries. The fact that a foreign deity was 'imported' shows its magical or ideological importance. There was thus motivation and time enough to amalgamate its mythology with the legends concerning the royal descent.

Given the possible secondary or borrowed nature of the avian features, the original substitute (if such existed) might have been characterised by quite the opposite features: it might have been a non-human being, bearing, however, the facial features of a human (**bya*), e.g. forward facing eyes, found with monkeys and certain carnivores, but also with birds of prey, particularly owls. While most birds close their eyes from below when sleeping, there are a few species that close them from above (parrots and hummingbirds) or from below *and* above, namely nightjars and owls. Pigeons, songbirds, and owls also move their upper lid downwards for protective blinking, the former two aslant, the latter strictly vertically (Curio 2001: 257, 263, Figs. 2b, 269). An owl, if one wants to insist upon an avian mythology, would have been the ideal counter model of a *bird with bird eyes* (that is, closing them from below) and at the same time *closing them like a human from above*.

<center><44> *ḥgebspa gchig*.</center>

All translations have an intransitive rendering, disregarding the fact that the verbal noun necessarily must refer to a human being, not to the eyes themselves. The water spirit does not wish 'one that gets covered' (a single eye) but 'one who covers (the eyes)'. In Mkhaspa Ldeḥu (ed. 1987: 246), the phrase is

replaced by *mig byamigbžin mas btsumpa gcig* 'one who (has) closed the eyes from below like bird eyes', from the verb I: *ḥdzum*, II: *btsum (zum)*, III: *gzum*, IV: *tshum* 'close, shut' with an equally transitive-agentive semantics. Apparently, all three translators reject the idea that there should be an agent in the case of shutting the lid of an eye, although first of all, OTC is not talking about 'shutting' or 'closing' the eye, but of covering the eye, where, in other contexts, the linguistic AGENT could well be the lid. None of them would probably mind that in their own languages, humans and various animals close and open their eyes for various purposes (examples such as *Do crested geckos close their eye lid when they are asleep? Do guinea pigs close their eyes when they sleep? Which animal does not close its eyes while sleeping?* can be easily *googled*), and they would even less mind that, when losing all potency of agency, one closes one's eyes for ever, according to an agentive transitive rendering. In Shamskat Ladakhi we may equally find: /lo gyatcu soŋsena, *khos* mik tsums./ 'Having become eighty years, *s/he-ergative* closed the eyes (for ever).' In this variety, the ergative indicates agentivity and thus intention and control on the part of the 'subject'. Non-control would be indicated by the aesthetive /khoa/ *khola*. For an impersonal reading only the genitive /khoei/ *khoḥi* could be used.

Languages may differ considerably in which body-related events can have a human subject or agent and how they are represented in a [±control] or [±transitivity] paradigm. It would certainly be an interesting research topic to study how Tibetan languages in general or a particular Tibetan variety treats body-related events. As a first step, one could try to follow the wording as closely as possibly, and if one's own or the goal language does not allow a transitive rendering, one could perhaps refer to the literal meaning in a note or bracket.

<center><45> <i>thogšig</i>.</center>

I do not want to preclude that this form is simply an error for *thoŋ*, stem IV of *gtoŋ* 'give' or that the variant spelling is triggered by some dialectal alternation between oral and nasal stops. Nevertheless, one should not prematurely rule out the possibility that the word *ḥdogs* might have had a broader spectrum of meanings. In the present context it is also possible that the provisions will be 'attached' on some pack animal.

<center><46> <i>cho Myibya</i>.</center>

See note 35 above. For the correct analysis of possible compounds, it is necessary to recapitulate the structure of two important types of noun-noun compounds: a) *tatpuruṣa* or determinative compounds and b) *karmadhāraya* or descriptive com-

pounds. In Tibetan, like in English, German, and many other languages, the modifying element of a *tatpuruṣa* compound *always precedes* the modified element. One could call this the *flower garden* vs. *garden flower* principle. The order within a Tibetan compound corresponds to the order of an ordinary Tibetan possessor construction and to the order of the German and English *s*-genitive. For instance: *fatherland = father's land*, in Tibetan *phayul = phaḥi yul*. There is no indication that the order could have been different in Old Tibetan. The only type of noun-noun compound, where the order is inverted, is the so-called *karmadhāraya* compound, a poetical device, whereby the first element is likened to the second one, as in Skr. *meghaduta* 'the cloud that is the messenger', *puruṣasiṃha* 'a man like a lion', or *rājadeva* 'a king like a god' for which latter we have a Tibetan equivalent in *rgyallha* used as the translation for the Roman title Caesar (Kesar or G(y)esar) and as a generic term for a certain type of protective deities. A valuable description of (modern) Tibetan compound formation is found in Goldstein (1994: 13-22).

Bacot & Toussaint do not translate *cho*. Macdonald similarly neglecting this word, comes to the solution that the person in question is 'une fille à moitié oiseau'. Haarh leaves the whole expression untranslated, although elsewhere (Haarh 1969: 209), he suggests a translation 'family-man-bird'. The three words cannot form a compound, or otherwise the translation should be something like the 'family's men and birds' (*tatpuruṣa & dvandva*) or the 'family's men that are like birds' (*tatpuruṣa & karmadhāraya*). The expected reading 'men-birds' family', that is, 'family of the men-birds' (however one analyses the latter compound), should have taken the form *myibya-cho* in Tibetan. I, therefore, think that *cho* has to be treated like a designation or title, which precedes a name: 'the family Man-bird'. If *man-bird* thus functions as a name, the synchronic interpretation as *karmadhāraya* compound 'a human who is like a bird' would make more sense than the *dvandva* compound 'men and birds'. As stated above note 35, the compound might be interpreted from a diachronic perspective as a translational compound 'man-man'. I would also think that the hidden punchline is that an offspring of this family bears bird-like features just because of the family or clan name, whatever the rationale behind the name might have been, and not because it belongs to a family of, or descending from, birds and men.

Hill (2006a: 95, n. 29) suggests the translation 'with a bird-man head' on the basis that in

> Zhang (1985) [=1993] the word *co* is defined as an archaic word for 'head.' It is because of this that I have the translation I have proposed, the difference in aspiration between *co* and *cho* being hardly relevant (cf. Hill, forthcomming [!] 'aspiration' [= Hill 2007]).

Apart from the facts that Hill completely inverted the order of the elements (the Tibetan equivalent to his translation would be something like *byamyi-mgo/co*), and that the genitive is not regularly used for the relation *with*, commonly expressed by *can* or *ldan*, I have quite some difficulties to conceive of this 'bird-man head': does the 'bird-man' have a human body and a bird's head or is it the other way round? Or does Hill actually intend 'a head with human and avian characteristics'?

In contrast to Hill, I do not think that the aspiration contrast is irrelevant *word-initially* (within words the contrast may be neutralised, depending on the dialect). Even if it could be proved that word-initial aspiration contrast was not phonemic with respect to the vocabulary inherited from proto-Tibetan (whatever language(s) this might have consisted of), Old Tibetan had already incorporated a large number of words from other languages of various affiliations, among them obviously a number of words with non-aspirated initials. It is a common feature that loanwords tend to be assimilated according to the phonologic structure of the receiving language. The fact, that the loans preserved their non-aspiration might thus be indicative, first of all, that the assumptions concerning the phonologic structure of proto-Tibetan might not be correct. On the other hand, one can also observe (e.g. in Baltistan and Ladakh with respect to the Urdu phoneme /q/) that speakers may get used to a foreign phoneme and begin to reinterpret and reorganise the phonological structure of their 'own' vocabulary even with respect to the complementary articulations (in this case /qh/ and /ɛ/).

A third possibility, and the most likely one in a multilingual setting, is that loans may retain their phonetic features, by virtue of being loans. In that case, the alternation between aspiration and non-aspiration would at least have a pragmatic function, and it would certainly be semantically distinctive. Whatever the actual development, with Hill's own words: "In the period of Old Tibetan inscriptions aspiration had begun to be phonemic" (2007: 489). This is, notably, the very period when OTC was compiled.

In the case of a somewhat questionable OT *co* 'head' and the much better attested OT *cho* 'family, lineage', surviving in the CT compounds *choḫbraṅ* 'lineage from the mother's side' and *chorigs* 'lineage from the father's side' (JÄK; the gender bias might not always hold), we would even have a clear minimal pair. Note also the relation with the verb I: *ḥcho*, II: *ḥchos* (possibly ~ *chos) 'be born' (a regular causative derivation would have led to the forms I: *ḥchod, II: *bcos*, III: *bco*, IV: *chos* 'to engender'; we find the same derivation, but with stem I: *ḥchos* for the not unrelated meaning of *production*: 'make, prepare, construct', while the causative meaning 'engender' has survived only in the forms I/III: *bšo*, II/IV: *bšos*). Note further the possible relation with *chos* 'dharma' as something that

'came into existence' or 'was able to be produced' (*potentialis* function of stem IV of causative verbs). Whether or not both words, *co* 'head' and *cho* 'family, lineage', were ultimately of proto-Tibetan origin, only one of the two terms, or even none, should not make much difference synchronically. For the philologist, at least, the question of how these two apparently unrelated words are spelled should not be irrelevant. The recourse to 'misspellings' or to the 'arbitrariness' or 'interchangeability' of certain graphemes can only be the very last step, when all alternative attempts for an explanation have failed.

<47> v157-v158.

The context as well as the syntax of these and the following clauses is not very clear. All translators interpret the sentence in the sense that the daughter of *cho Myibya* was sleeping. Implied in this analysis is an identity between *bumo* 'daughter, girl' and *bu* 'son, child' in clause v159. Later tradition clearly speaks of a girl, *bumo* (cf. Linnenborn 2004: 164f.). There are several arguments speaking against this interpretation, and while each one might not be very strong, the sum might perhaps gain a certain momentum.

The first argument is the different wording. I should think that the gender distinction between *bumo* 'daughter' and *bu* 'son' cannot be ignored, and that the text would, in fact, be utterly messed up, if an identity was intended. I should further think that in a society of warriors it is more likely that a male child had to be offered in recompense for an emperor's body than a female one (but cf. Linnenborn's argument, 2004: 164, according to which the girl would represent the primordial birdlike female ancestor *Mobyabtsun*).

Secondly, while the verb *yur* or perhaps only the collocation *gñid yur* may have the meaning 'slumber' or 'sleep', it seems somewhat strange that this should be combined with the agentive verb *byed* 'do, make, perform', which leads to an agentive reading, such as 'tried to slumber', 'pretended to slumber', or 'caused so else to slumber'. Except perhaps for the causative reading (see further below), these interpretations do not seem to be applicable. A more modest function, namely to highlight the agentivity or responsibility, would make sense only in contexts where the 'act' of slumbering is somehow important for the plot, but it does not seem to be well-motivated in the case of a simple background information (see also below). I would further think that a child lying in a cradle, lacks the necessary intentionality or responsibility for an 'act' of sleeping, but in such instances, languages may behave idiosyncratically.

Thirdly, the (male) child in question (*bu*) lies in a cradle, v159, while the girl (*bumo*) is led along (*khrid*) in v180 (l. 48). To my understanding, the verb *ḥkhrid*

implies that an animal or person led along can move by its own. By contrast, a child in a cradle would rather be carried along (*ḥkhur*, *ḥkhyer*).

Finally, if *bumo* and *bu* were identical, one would also not expect that the subject of clause v159 *bu khuljona ḥdugpažig* would be explicitly mentioned. Likewise one would not expect the repeated use of *ḥdug* in v159 and v162, if v162 expressed that the child had certain attributes or features, and one of these features would be the fact that it was 'one who lay in the cradle' (v159). One would also not expect to have the act of sleeping separated from the situation of lying in a cradle. The strangeness of this construction shows up, less dramatically perhaps, in the following English rendering: 'When he came to a *sleeping she-child* of the family Manbird, [she] **was a child who lay in a cradle*, one that closed her eyes from below, like bird eyes.'

Most crucially, however, any translation of *ḥdug* as an attributive copula (*x is y*) presumes that the evidential distinction between *ḥdug* (observed or new knowledge) and *yod* (intimate or assimilated knowledge) as found in the modern Tibetan languages had already fully developed in Old Tibetan, so that it could override the semantic distinction between the attributive copula (*x is y*) *yin* and the existential copula (*at y there exists x*) *yod* or *ḥdug* (the use of *ḥdug* as an existential copula is based on its full verb meaning 'sit, dwell, stay'). To my present knowledge, such an assumption would be premature.

With the necessary reservation that the text might have been messed up, I would suggest to distinguish between the adult *bumo* who is doing some work (or perhaps even lies down to sleep), and her (male) child (*bu*) lying in the 'cradle' near to her or even on her back. Ladakhi women traditionally carried their small children in baskets on their back while working on the fields, and this custom might have been practised in other regions of Tibet as well.

The previous translations all take the limiting quantifier *-žig* 'a, one' to operate over a complex NP (indicated here by angle brackets and italics): 'il arriva près d'<u>une</u> *<fille, née d'un homme et un oiseaux, qui dormait>*' (Bacot & Toussaint); 'he came across <u>a</u> *<daughter of Cho-myi-bya who was lying asleep>*' (Haarh), '[He] went near to <u>a</u> *<sleeping girl with a bird-man-head>*' (Hill). However, the limiting quantifier *žig* 'a, some', like other quantifiers, demarcates the right end of an NP, here *<cho Mibyaḥi bumo>-<u>žig</u>*. By no means can it operate on what follows subsequently. The following phrase *yurba byedpa*, however one wants to analyse it, thus cannot modify the preceding NP.

<cho Mibyaḥi bumo-žig> may be an argument of a causative construction *yurba byedpa* 'lull, make sleep'. Similarly, both *<cho Mibyaḥi bumo-žig>* and *<yurba>* could be arguments of a nominalised clause with the verb *byed*. But in the latter case, this nominalisation would specify the place where Ŋarleskyes ar-

rived ('when he came to *<where a daughter of ... did X>*'), and one would thus expect the nominaliser *-sa* instead of *-pa*.

If one takes the first NP (ending with *bumožig*) as the CAUSÉE argument of the causative construction *yurba byed* 'lull, make sleep', Ŋarleskyes would arrive in front of an unnamed person of unknown gender acting upon the girl: *when he came to <[someone] making a daughter of ... asleep>*. The latter, by contrast, would be specified by its particular affiliation. While grammatically not completely impossible, it appears pragmatically infelicitous that the person whom Ŋarleskyes meets is not mentioned at all. One could at least have expected another limiting quantifier for the unspecified NP (that is, the referent of the nominalised clause). Likewise, from the point of stylistics, it is not very convincing that a few clauses further down this seemingly irrelevant person is suddenly identifiable (although not with necessity) as the mother of the child.

The phrase *yurba byedpa* can thus only be understood as an apposition or as an insertion or a kind of afterthought. Due to the linear order of speech, the postposition would have to follow the inserted phrase, but semantically and syntactically, it would be directly linked to the preceding NP on the matrix level (unfortunately, this is not reflected in our annotation). In English, this could only be simulated by inverting the information structure: '(he came up to — *<[one] who was doing X>* — *<a daughter of …>*)'.

To my opinion the apposition (or inserted and subordinated phrase) represents background information. Nominalised clauses behave like nominal adjectives and appear in the same syntactic slots as adjectives, that is, they may either precede or follow the head noun. The difference between these two orders corresponds in a way to the difference between restrictive and non-restrictive relative clauses in English. The latter provide additional information, which is not necessary for the identification of the noun. Restrictive relative clauses, by contrast, serve to single out an item from a possibly larger set of like items. Tibetan adjectives and nominalised clauses that precede their head noun (and are linked to it with the genitive marker) serve exactly this purpose. In the case of *rta nagpo*, one would be talking casually about the colour of an already identified horse (or set of horses). In the case of *nagpoḫi rta*, one would refer contrastively to the colour in order to identify the horse (or set of horses) in question: *(only) a horse that is black*. With respect to (nominal) adjectives and nominalised clauses, we could thus speak of restrictive or foregrounding and non-restrictive or backgrounding word order. For the very reason that nominal clauses most often serve the purpose of identification, they are only infrequently found after the noun they modify, quite in contrast to nominal adjectives, which mainly serve to embellish a statement, and hence are most frequently found after the noun they modify.

Therefore, if 'doing X' in the sense of *sleeping* were crucial for the plot (because one can see the birdlike feature only when the eyes are closed), one could have expected the foregrounding or restrictive word order: *yurba byedpaḥi cho Myibyaḥi bumožig*. This would also have been the true counterpart for the translations of Bacot & Toussaint and Haarh.

<div align="center"><48> khuljo.</div>

As Hill (2006a: 95, n. 30) already mentioned, *khu.ljo* is taken to be the equivalent of *khul.žo* 'crib' by Gñaḥgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan (1995: 22 n. 17) and Wang & Bsodnams Skyid (1992: 36 n. 142 on p. 80), but the latter word itself is classified as 'archaic' in TETT. The relation between the two forms could be explained by the *dorje-effect*, a common sound change in compounds: after an open syllable, such as *rdo*, the initial of a second-syllable consonant cluster, such as the *r-* in *rje*, migrates leftwards beyond the original syllable boundary, and is reanalysed by the speakers as a syllable final, in which position it may survive also in the modern Central Tibetan dialects: /dor-je/. This sound change has been described under various labels mostly for the modern Tibetan varieties, but cf. Hogan (1996) for Old Tibetan. The change from *j* to *ž* may have been triggered by the 'loss' of the original pre-radical, but we also find in West Tibetan a certain interchangeability between /j/ and /ž/.

Bacot & Toussaint give the grammatically possible, but in the context of the narrative quite unlikely, translation 'sous un arbre de paradis' emending *khuljo* as *khuljon*. Haarh's translation 'it was the daughter of *Khuljona*' is simply incorrect. If at all, the sentence could be interpreted as 'the boy *was *Khuljona*' or 'it *was the boy *Khuljona*'. However, as mentioned in note 47, we do not have any evidence that *ḥdug* 'stay, live' or 'have' could have been used in place of the attributive copula *yin* 'be' in Old Tibetan.

<div align="center"><49> thorto ḥphrenmo.</div>

While *thorto* is attested as 'top-knot', *ḥphrenmo* appears to be a *hapax legomenon*. Bacot & Toussaint, Hill, and van Schaik (2008) leave the word untranslated, Haarh interprets it as 'braid', but his translation 'the top-knot of the hair should be bound like a braid' would require a locative-purposive marker: *ḥphrenmor* or an even more explicit equivalent for 'like'. Gñaḥgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan (1995: 22, n. 19) suggests a reading *phramo* 'fine thin'. While *phramo* or *phran* seem to be the closest forms available for an adjective, this would not only necessitate two emendations (elimination of the pre-radical and change of the vowel) but it would

also imply that the knot is thin or little. For an adjective modifying the topknot, one could expect the opposite meaning.

Dan Martin (TETT), citing Btsanlha, equates *thorto* with *thorgtshugs*, which Jim Valby (TETT) again describes as "plaited hair bound up on the head in a spiral, plaited tuft of hair, toupee, luxuriant locks dressed neatly on the crown of the head". Similarly, Ives Waldo (TETT) paraphrases *thorto* as "hair bound like a *gtsugtor*" (transliteration adjusted), the latter word also meaning turban (Jim Valby, TETT). Only Rangjung Yeshe (TETT) indicates a meaning for *ḥphren*: *ḥphrenpa* 'be possessive of'. Perhaps this could be paraphrased as 'contain, hold sth. together'. In that case, a *ḥphrenmo* might be something that holds the hair tuft together, a ribbon or turban.

Otherwise, since *thor-* somehow implies a plaited tuft (cf. also JÄK for *thorcog* and *thortshug*), and since this meaning might perhaps be related to *thorbu* 'single, separate, scattered' (cf. also Jim Valby in TETT, who defines *thor* as 'anything gathered into a single point, what is in a tangle, drawn out fine'), the whole expression might perhaps refer to *fine plaits*. Plaited hair is attested also for the male population of Greater Yangtong (cf. Pelliot 1963: 708), that is, most probably Upper Ladakh and parts of the Byaŋthaŋ (Zeisler forthcoming, chapter 2, § 1.2.3), and was more generally found among the Iranian populations (cf. the Arsakid and Sasanian coins), particularly in Afghanistan (cf. the *Jaṭāsuras* of the 6th century *Bṛhatsaṃhitā*, ~~north-eastern (!) section, Fleet 1973: 12 – the three northern sections are quite obviously mixed up, and it seems that most references belong to the north-western section, corresponding to present-day Afghanistan, otherwise one should locate the *Jaṭāsuras* in the Byaŋthaŋ);~~

<50> *bciŋs*.

Cf. Bacot & Toussaint. Whatever the exact meaning of *thorto ḥphrenmo*, there is no doubt that the hair or headdress should have been bound up (*bciŋs*), which is quite surprising, since the typical mourning behaviour, at least for close relatives would have been to *cut* the hair, to blacken the face, and to wear entirely black clothes, as described in the *Jiu Tangshu* (2a, Pelliot 1961: 3). Quite in accordance with this description although without reference to it, van Schaik (2008) suggests that the topknot should have been cut off, pointing to similar usages among the Scythians, the Xiongnu, and Huns, where the mourners cut of their plaits and lacerated their faces. Nevertheless, if this were the intended meaning, the verb *ḥchiŋs* 'bind' would have been completely out of place. While one can argue about the meaning of the verb *bžags* (see note 52 below), I do not see any possibility to reconcile the notion of binding a topknot with the notion of cutting it. Either the text or the interpreter errs.

Given the fact, however, that also the next activity does not really correspond to a self-destructive or self-deforming mourning behaviour (see note 51), but rather to a festive act of dressing up, one should interpret the binding up of the top-knot similarly as a festive act of dressing up. The text seems thus to indicate that the ransom for Drigum's corpse consisted in a change of mourning behaviour, at least with respect to a ruler. The intention could have been to set the ruler apart from ordinary beings.

<51> *ŋola mtshalgyis byugs*.

Cf. Bacot & Toussaint. Note the non-honorific form. The action is thus to be performed by the addressee and the mourners in general reflexively upon themselves (here and in the case discussed in the following note, this rather apparent, yet often neglected fact has been observed independently by van Schaik 2008).

The ordinary CT frame for the verb *ḥbyug* would be that the MEDIUM, that is, the colour etc., is in the absolutive and the SUBSTRATE, that is the item anointed, takes a locational marker (our pattern 09a, cf. BRGY). In this passage, however, the verb follows partly a pattern also known from the verb *rgyan* 'adorn, decorate', where the MEDIUM takes the instrumental and, as a consequence, the SUBSTRATE should be in the absolutive (cf. JÄK, sub *brgyanpa*). Here, however, we find the dative-locative marker *la*. As already mentioned (at the end of note 12), the use of the dative-locative instead of the absolutive can have an emphatic contrastive or identificatory function. But it also can have a partitive function, namely to indicate that the event did not concern the whole PATIENT-argument, but only part of it (cf. Zeisler 2006a: 75-78). In our case, this means, that not the whole face was covered, but only parts of the face. The difference could be simulated for English perhaps with the alternation 'besmear *the face* with vermilion' vs. 'smear vermilion *on* the face': only the first, not the second reading implies that the colour covers the whole face.

Like the colour, this is an important detail. While the Jiu Tangshu describes that the mourners besmear their (whole) face with a black colour, OTC speaks of putting red colour on parts of the face. While the former process corresponds to a kind of self-deformation, the latter is clearly an act of adornment, cf. Sam van Schaik's posting http://earlytibet.com/−2007/10/05/red-faced-men-iii/, with photographs of coffins from the tombs in Guolimu, a village near Delingha in Qinghai Province (Amdo), excavated by Xu Xinguo in 2002. The photographs show paintings of Ḥaža (?) men and women, having their faces nicely decorated with red circles on the cheeks and the front.

<52> *bžags (gžags).*

Wang & Bsodnams Skyid (1992: 80, n. 143) and Gñaḥgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan (1995: 22, n. 20) interpret this respectively as 'having made lines upon the body' (*luspoḥi-thogla thig btab*) and 'beautifully ornament' (*lusla ni mdzespar byan*). The word is only attested as a verb in BTSH (*gžags ~ bžags*) and ThDG (I/III/IV: *gžags*, II: *bžags*), whereas BRGY (sub *bžags*) lists it as an adjective 'adorned or beautiful' (*brgyanpaḥam mdzespa*). While BTSH defines the meaning as 'adorn' (*rgyanpaḥi don*), ThDG gives the meaning as 'to beautify, ornament', paraphrasing it, however, as *mdzespa* 'beautiful' and *rgyanpa* 'adorned', thus ultimately as an adjective. Neither BTSH nor BRGY give an example for the usage.

According to the BRGY the word also takes the forms *gžags* and *gžabs*, the latter with the meanings: 1. *bžagspa*, 2. *brtagspa* 'considered', 3. *ḥjabpa* 'sneaking', cf. TETT where the source for all three meanings is given as Btsanlha. The verb *gžab*, on the other hand, of which one might perhaps think in connection with *gžabs* (as alternative form to *gžags*), has the meaning 'lick' in JÄK (based on Schiefner) and 'skim off' in DYGB, and does not lead to a meaningful result.

Bacot & Toussaint, Haarh, and van Schaik (2008) translate the verb as 'lacerate' on the base of the verb *ḥjog₂* 'cut, hew, carve, chip', stem II of which, however, is *bžog(s)*. Hill translates it as 'lay down the body' based on the verb *ḥjog₁*, the regular stem II of which is *bžag* not *bžags*. This comes as a surprise, since he refers to the above-mentioned entry in BRGY and the interpretations of Wang & Bsodnams Skyid and Gñaḥgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan.

Van Schaik suggests that the mourners follow Central Asian rites of scratching one's face, attested, e.g. for Scythians, Xiongnu, Hephthalites, and Huns (van Schaik 2008 with a citation of Herodotus). If such custom prevailed among the early Tibetans, it went unnoticed by the Chinese, cf. the above description in the Jiu Tangshu. But apart from the fact that the text speaks of the body and not of the face, and that neither case marking nor the stem forms match, the general use of *ḥjog₂* 'cut, hew, carve, chip' would indicate a much more forceful action, than just scratching. It would be also somewhat strange to combine the destructive act of scratching one's body with the constructive act of anointing one's face (and binding up the hair in a festive manner) just before.

Bacot & Toussaint, Haarh, van Schaik, and Hill, all overlook, that according to the case marking, something should be 'lacerated' or 'laid down' *on* the body. In the case of 'lacerated' and 'adorned', but certainly not in the case of Hill's 'laid down', we may again deal with a partitive reading. Apart from this, none of the translations renders stem II correctly as a form signalling anteriority and not a

command (and likewise not corresponding to a simple present as suggested by van Schaik).

Given the fact that Chinese sources, linguistic analysis, and cultural comparison point to the presence of Iranian or Iranianised tribes, more particularly also Scythians, on the Tibetan plateau (Roerich 1930, Pelliot 1963: 695: tribes venerating the *asura*, Bellezza 2008, part I, section 6, section 9.3, part II sections 9.2-3), I wonder whether 'applying an ornament on the body' might not mean here 'applying a tattoo'.

Something like this could be implied by Wang & Bsodnams Skyid's interpretation, but more probably they think of the 80 vermilion lines that are to be driven into Drigum's corpse (in order to pay for the bird-eyed victim) as reported by Dpaḥbo Gtsuglag (cf. the discussion in note 20). But note again the non-honorific form for *lus* 'body' instead of *sku* or *spur*. The action is thus to be performed by the addressee and his compatriots reflexively upon themselves.

<53> *ḥtshog*.

I follow Bacot & Toussaint, who translate 'assemble at', based on the verb *ḥtshog*$_1$. Haarh translates 'incision should be made into the corpse', Hill, followed by van Schaik (2008) have 'pierce the corpse', the latter two again without accounting for the locational case marker. Both translations are based on the verb *ḥtshog*$_2$, given as 'beat' in BRGY. BRGY gives an example for a locational marker on the second argument. Together with the classification as *thadadpa* this would yield our pattern 07 (ergative & dative-locative). Only JÄK offers the meaning 'pierce, inoculate, vaccinate, but this meaning would not fit with a pattern 07 (but it might yield our pattern 09a: ergative & dative-locative & absolutive if something is inserted into something). Wang & Bsodnams Skyid (1992: 80, n. 144) opt for the meaning 'beat', while Gñaḥgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan (1995: 23, n. 21, as cited by Hill 2006a: 96, n. 36) suggests the reading 'embalm'. This latter suggestion looks rather like a mere guess and again does not account for the locational case marking.

Mkhaspa Ldeḥu and Dpaḥbo Gtsuglag are quite explicit that the corpse should be beaten or that nails should be driven in (see note 20 above), but I have great difficulties to understand why this could be a ransom or more generally why nails should be driven into a corpse or why it should be beaten (except perhaps to break the bones, but then this could have been made more explicit). This holds also for clause v210 (l. 57f.) below, where the thigh is beaten (this time, however, the verb *rduŋ* with our pattern 08: ergative & absolutive is used). The interpretation 'assemble', on the other hand, fits well with the fact that food and drinking is to be distributed (see the second nominal clause after this clause). The verb form does

not conform to the standard stem IV but to stem I. I do not think that it necessarily represents a command form. The clause is part of a conditional construction. A such it may also have a more general application.

<54> *rlom*.

See also epigraphic notes and illustrations θ, *rlom*. Bacot & al. (1940: 99) and Haarh (1969: 405) read *phom*, Wang & Bsodnams Skyid (1992: 37) *bcom*, which would yield the compound *ḥphrogbcom* 'ravish and plunder' (TETT). Dan Martin and Brandon Dotson in their comments to Sam van Schaik's posting suggest a reading *chom*; the latter had suggested *lom* (cf. http://earlytibet.com/2008/10/27/between-death-and-the-tomb/). The first reading, *phom*, can definitely be ruled out. The second reading, *bcom*, cannot be corroborated by the corresponding letters in the manuscript. The next candidate, letter *cha*, likewise looks somewhat different in the manuscript: its two loops are usually smaller and somewhat more slanted, than the visible semi-square and semi-circle. The only letters that seem to fit the visible pattern are the cluster *rl-* of *brliŋ* in line 21 or *rlag* in line 35 and 40: in all these cases, the *r-* starts with a short head line, from which a vertical stroke descends in the middle, to this is added at the bottom an almost horizontal stroke, moving slightly upwards to the right side, where it is joined again by a vertical stroke, the right-most part of the *-l-*. The left part of the *-l-* forms a three-quarter circle, open at the bottom. From the low right end of this open circle a straight line leads to the lower end of the right vertical stroke of the *l-*. The straight bottom line of the *-l-*, its right-most vertical stroke, and the lower part of the *r-* form thus a semi-square. In the case of the defect letter, one can see this semi-square with slightly rounded edges, the middle vertical stroke of the *r-* and the left part of the circle of the *-l-*. In between these two parts the document shows a sort of white scratch, reaching even the head line. One might nevertheless guess a connecting diagonal stroke in the *-l-* subscript (as particularly visible in the edited photograph).

All translations take the preceding *ḥphrog* as a verb. According to Bacot & Toussaint, a pot is taken away from the people — but then its content, the food is distributed to the people. According to Haarh it is the corpse that should be taken away *from* the people, while van Schaik (2008) wants it to be 'taken away *to* the people' (emphasis added in both cases). All three translations play down the aggressive semantics of the verb *ḥphrog* 'rob, deprive'. Hill captures this notion of force by his translation "expell [!] the men", but none of the dictionaries gives this meaning, and it is somewhat odd that the entity expelled should bear a locational case marker.

All translations neglect the fact that the word *ḥphrog* does not take the last position in the clause or phrase, and thus cannot be a verb, except if the following word is again a verb. If *rlom* were an independent verb, it would lack a suitable argument, even more since *ḥphrog* is nowhere attested as noun. As for the intended meaning, I have difficulties to understand why the people should be either deprived of the corpse or be expelled, especially if the corpse is where people should assemble and where victuals are distributed. If *ḥphrog* and *rlom* denote two independent actions, it is also difficult to understand how one could command a forceful disappropriation (*ḥphrog*) in the same breath as a boasting behaviour (*rlom₂*, treated as inagentive verb in BRGY) or a sort of oppressing (*rlom₁*) the mind of the people.

I would think that Bacot & Toussaint's translation comes closest to the intended meaning. But I should suggest reading this and the following clauses as nominal clauses. At least in the second nominal clause after clause v171 (l. 47) it is absolutely evident that *za* (stem I) cannot be the command form 'eat!': stem IV should be *zo* (some dictionaries give stem IV also as *zos*, but this might be an artificial form). *zaḥthuŋ* should thus be taken as a compound, see also note 55 below. Expecting a parallel construction in the present clause, I would suggest reading *ḥphrogrlom* as compound, combining the agentive stems I of the verbs *ḥphrog* and *rlom*.

According to the Tibetan grammatical theory of *bdag & gžan* 'self and other', which describes correctly the agent-orientation of stem I and the patient-orientation of stem III in nominal or embedded usage (cf. Zeisler 2004: 264f.), the compound should be translated as 'robber and swaggerer' (or 'robber and oppressor'), due to the use of two times stem I. Since this does not make much sense in this context, the compound seems to denote the activities as such, 'robbing and boasting' (or 'robbing and oppressing'), which I have tried to capture by a word play. It should not denote the objects of these activities, for which stem III is to be used. While I am somewhat sceptical whether stem I could be used to denote activities, my colleague Frank Müller-Witte, who studied the problems of *bdag & gžan* in some detail and who would argue for an even wider range of the opposition, has no objection against the use of stem I for actions — as long as the notion of agentship remains foregrounded (p.c.).

Nevertheless, I should add an observation made in this connection: the above-mentioned compound *ḥphrogbcom* 'ravish and plunder' would combine stem I (agent focus) with stem III (patient focus), apparently in order to express an activity from a holistic perspective, combining the two possible foci. The order of these foci does not seem to be fixed, as we can also observe a similar compound *byabyed* 'doings, activity, fuss' (JÄK, cf. also TVP v198, fol. 263v2) with the opposite order of stem III and stem I. In any case, a combination of stem I with stem

III would be the ideal form to express activities rather than the combination of two times stem I as in our text. As we can see in the similar compound *zaḥthuŋ* (note 55 below), the rules of *bdag* & *gžan* are not always applied strictly in compound formation. They nevertheless constitute an important thumb rule.

Not fitting at all into our view of the Tibetan world, the intended meaning of the compound *ḥphrogrlom* seems to be that the warriors are allowed to show off their booties or, even worse, that they are allowed to go on a raid (only the second interpretation is possible if one reads *ḥphrogbcom*). Ritual practice of violence is, however, not unheard of, and while we seem to have evidence mostly from the Indo-European antiquity (an extreme example is the *Krypteia* terror system against the Helotes in Sparta), this does not mean that other archaic societies did not have similar rites or institutions. Thomas Preiswerk (p.c.) points out that early Chinese rulers on the occasion of their enthronement went on raids against the 'barbarous' tribes, later this was replaced by extensive hunting parties with animals killed in extremely large numbers.

One may thus wonder whether the raid against the Loŋam tribe described in v197 to v207 (ll. 53-56) was not just such an act of ritual man hunting, rather than a simple act of revenge. The Loŋam are depicted here either as cowards or as comparatively defenceless people and the subsequent song (following v209 up to v213, ll. 57f.), quite apparently likens the raid to a hunting expedition. It may well be the case that the figure of *Loŋam the regicide* is a mere fiction, constructed not just to cover a break in the lineage (or rather the non-existence of such lineage), but to camouflage the, from the Buddhist perspective, absolute skandalon of men hunt at the very beginning, and as a foundation, of the lineage.

<55> *zaḥthuŋ*.

Like in the case of the above *ḥphrogrlom* the compound shows the combination of two agentive stems I of the verbs *za/ bzaḥ* 'eat' and *ḥthuŋ* 'drink'. One should thus likewise expect a translation as 'eater and drinker' or as referring to the activities of 'eating and drinking' directed towards the victuals. The corresponding CT compound referring to the objects of this activity predictably shows stem III (for *ḥthuŋ*, at least), at least in the dictionary entries: *zabtuŋ* (TETT; I & III) or *bzaḥbtuŋ* (BRGY, TETT; III & III) 'eating and drinking', i.e., 'what is to be eaten and to be drunk', cf. also the non-compound form *bzaḥbadaŋ btuŋba* 'meat and drink, specially the quality and quantity of food' (JÄK). The compound is also found in some modern varieties: in Ladakh with the meaning 'food and drinks' as /zathuŋ/ (Norman, in preparation, and own data: Upper and Lower Ladakh) ~ /zatuŋ/ (Hamid 1998, with the spelling *bzaḥbtuŋ*) ~ /zapthuŋ/ (Ramsay 1890, own data: Lower Ladakh and Gya-Sasoma), in Balti as /zapthuŋ/ with the meaning

'food management, catering' (Sprigg 2002), in Nubri as /sa̱ptuŋ/ and in Spiti with vowel assimilation as /si̱ptuŋ/ both with the somewhat reduced meaning 'food' (CDTD).

While most versions correspond to a spelling *zabtuŋ* or *bzaḥbtuŋ* with stem III for the verb *ḥthuŋ*, the first Ladakhi variant rather corresponds to the OT compound with the combination of two times stem I, apparently again against the rules of *bdag* & *gžan*. The forms /zapthuŋ/ (possibly reflecting an OT pronunciation), /sa̱ptuŋ/, and /si̱ptuŋ/ are instances of the *dorje-effect* or leftward consonant migration, by which prefixes could be preserved as finals of preceding open syllables. Due to various sociolinguistic factors, such compounds are now in decline in Ladakh and are replaced by compounds without the migrated prefixes. While it cannot be precluded thus that the form /zathuŋ/ actually goes back to an earlier /zapthuŋ/ (one would have otherwise expected also the occurrence of the form */zanthuŋ/ for *zaḥthuŋ*, with preservation of the *ḥ-* prefix), the Ladakhi compound /zathuŋ/ as well as the formally identical OT compound *zaḥthuŋ* could perhaps indicate that with respect to compound formation, the *bdag* & *gžan* 'rules' merely describe (strong) tendencies.

One reason could perhaps lie in the irregular behaviour of the verb 'eat'. According to a regular weak paradigm one could expect the form *za* to represent stem I and *bzaḥ* stem III, but quite apparently, the verb does not behave regularly, so that we find the latter spelling also for stem I, e.g. in BRGY, while the data from the dialects suggests that the prefixed forms for stems I/III, and II are not based on linguistic facts, cf. CDTD sub *za*. This may have combined with the likewise somewhat irregular behaviour of the verb 'drink', which at least according to JÄK does not necessarily follow the paradigm with respect to stem II: we may find *thuŋs* in place of paradigmatic *btuŋs*. Thus already at an early time, but perhaps restricted to few varieties, the verb *ḥthuŋ* might have either followed a paradigm of non-agentive verbs or underwent a levelling of stem forms (cf. Zeisler forthcoming chapter 3 § 3), in this case towards stem I. It is interesting to see, that the overwhelming majority of the modern varieties shows an aspirated form based on the regular stem I, thus /thuŋ/ in West and Central Tibetan, and variants of /nthuŋ/ in East Tibetan (CDTD), the exceptions being a few Western and Central Tibetan varieties: Ngari Purang, Dingri, Shigatse, and Lhasa with variants of /tūŋ/ *btuŋ*. If it was not for these exceptions and the above compounds, one could think that the prefixed written forms *btuŋs* (stem II) and *btuŋ* (stem III) had no base in the spoken language.

Given this data from the spoken languages it is quite obvious that the compound *zaḥthuŋ* might equally have an AGENT and a PATIENT reading: 'eater and drinker' ('eating and drinking as activities') and 'what is to be eaten and drunk'. The parallelism with the preceding nominal clause suggests an activity reading.

<56> *mnaḥmthoḥ bchad*.

For the use of *gcod* 'cut' in this collocation see note 73 below. The expression indicates that tallies might have been used as tokens for an oath.

<57> *lto*.

Wang & Bsodnams Skyid (1992: 80, n. 146) interpret the word as *ltotshaŋ* 'family, household'. They seem to overlook that the same interpretation should hold for clause v70 (l. 20), where Drigum's corpse eventually gets into the 'household' or rather belly of the same spirit. From a Buddhist perspective it is certainly preferable if a person given as ransom is handed over to a household and is not devoured by a spirit. But by all that we know from the early Tibetan burial practises, animals were sacrificed as 'ransom' for the defunct, and hence we cannot preclude a similar human sacrifice in conformity with Central Asian practises.

<58> *Ñalha*.

Obviously a compound, the first element of which is a short form of the name *Ñakhyi*. The second seems to be the (imperial) title, rather than a name, since otherwise one would have expected the compound *Ña-Ša*. Bacot & Toussaint do not translate the names and simply speak of 'les deux frères'. Hill follows Zeisler (2004: 388, example 283), where it is suggested to read *ša* instead of *lha*. An emendation is, however, not really necessary. If it is Šakhyi who becomes the new lord (for doubts concerning this interpretation see note 64 below), he would be the country's god, *lha*, or with some more probability, the *lhasras* 'son of the gods', as the emperor is usually addressed.

<59> *mgur*.

Cf. Panglung (1988: 324, n. 20). All translations (including unfortunately Zeisler 2004: 388, example 283) opt for *gur* 'tent', which accordingly would be 'pitched' (*ḥbubs*). But this interpretation would be syntactically invalid (see note 61 below). Moreover, the pre-radical cannot simply be ignored. Even in the modern clusterless dialects of Western and Central Tibet and those that only lost the nasal pre-radicals, as the Leh dialect and the Shamskat varieties of Baltistan and Lower Ladakh, there would be a phonemic difference between /kur/ < *gur* and /gur/ < *mgur* as in Shamskat and Leh or between semi-aspirated /k'ur/ < *gur* and possibly prenasalised /(ŋ)kur/ < *mgur* in Western and Central Tibetan.

The word *mgur* has various meanings. The basic meaning seems to be 'neck, throat', from which the meanings 'vocal chord, voice', and further 'air, melody, song' might have been secondarily derived. For Tibetans, the meaning 'neck, shoulder' seems to be self-evident, cf., e.g. Panglung (1988: 325, n. 20). According to Gñaḥgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan (1995: 23, n. 22), the notion 'neck' must be understood in the sense of *risked* 'middle part of a mountain' (cf. TETT; not a 'cavern' as Hill 2006a: 96, n. 40 translates). Similarly, Wang & Bsodnams Skyid 1992: 80, n. 147, suggest reading *mgur* as *rimgur* or *rimgul*, which they define as *rildebs* 'mountain slope', or 'side'. Cf. also P.t.1068, l. 101 for a similar instance of *mgur*:

> *Lhakhapo Gaŋsrgyalgyi mgurna ḥtshalžiŋ-mchisde*
> '[He, the elder yak-brother] was roaming on the slope(s) of Lhakhapo Gaŋsrgyal (King of Glaciers).'

Since both forms *mgur* and *mgul* have the meaning 'neck, throat', they seem to be dialectal variants, and both forms might thus have originally also referred to the 'neck' or 'shoulder' of a mountain. Reading *mgur* as 'mountain slope' (of Gyaŋto) would yield the necessary indication of where the funeral monument was built.

<60> *Gyaŋto*.

Bacot & Toussaint (unfortunately also Zeisler 2004: 388, example 283) translate 'de pisé'. They do not understand that Gyaŋto or Gyaŋtho is the name of a holy mountain in Rkoŋpo, one of the candidates for the descent from heaven of the primordial king, on which, according to certain traditions, at least, Drigum is buried: Lhari Gyaŋtho (cf. Panglung 1988: 353, Karmay 1989: 536; who identified a mound at Miyul Skyimthiŋ with Drigum's grave). Haarh translates the phrase *Gyaŋto bla* as 'with its upper part like Gyaŋto', Hill as 'high [as] Gyaŋto' (transliteration adjusted), Macdonald quite cryptically as 'en guise de 'tente de l'âme' (la montagne Lhari) Gyaŋto' (transliteration adjusted). In all cases, at least one locational case marker is missing, either on *bla* (to make it an adverb of 'pitch') or on Gyaŋto for the comparison. Neither Haarh nor Macdonald nor Hill think of Mt. Gyaŋto as the place where the funeral monument could have been built.

<61> *Blaḥbubs*.

Quite apparently, this is an element of the mountain name, cf. Panglung (1988: 325). Since all translators interpret *mgur* as *gur* (cf. note 59 above) it is only con-

sistent that Bacot & Toussaint (with Zeisler 2004: 388, example 283) and Hill furthermore understand the tent to 'be pitched', because, as Hill (2006a: 96, n. 40, transcription adapted) states: "the verb *ḥbubs* means specifically 'to pitch a tent'". Haarh translates *ḥbubs* with 'piled up'. But stem II of the agentive-causative verb *ḥbubs* 'put (a roof), pitch (a tent)' is *phub(s) < *b-pub* (OTC also *pub*, cf. clause v201, l. 55 below).

The inagentive counter part 'be turned over, upside down' does not seem to be well attested in CT and is thus not included in BRGY or BTSH. JÄK and other word lists give its stem II as *bub* or *ḥbub*, without final *-s*. The inagentive verb is, however, well attested in the western and central dialects (CDTD). The Balti and Shamskat (plus Leh) Ladakhi form /bups/ 'stumble, fall down, decline in status' (cf. also CDTD) indicates that the final *-s* belongs to the root and that the spelling *ḥbubs* of OTC, if referring to the resulting state of being 'upside down' could represent a linguistic fact. With respect to a mountain slope, the notion of being 'upside down' might perhaps be equivalent to being 'concave'.

Since the phrase *Gyaŋto blaḥbubs* is followed by a genitive marker and functions thus as modifier of the following noun *mgur* and since the slope in question is without doubt part of Mt. Gyaŋto, *blaḥbubs* must be an attribute of either the mountain or the slope. The later solution is suggested by Karmay (1989: 536), who suggests that this would have been the south-west foot of Mt. Gyaŋto, at the base of which lies an ancient tomb, which may or may not be Drigum's tomb. While criticising Macdonald's translation 'tente de l'âme', Karmay, nevertheless, suggests that the name were associated with a soul (*bla*) ritual. According to him, the verb *ḥbubs* would not only denote something that is pitched or the act of pitching, but would also be used in the sense of 'explain essential points' as in the case of the expression *khoghbubs*. The latter term basically denotes the 'design of an outline (for a tent or house)' and only secondarily the 'setting up of parameters' or 'defining a context' (cf. BRGY, TETT). However, if the name were an attribute of the slope, we would be in need of a further genitive marker after *Gyaŋto*.

As an attribute of the mountain, the compound could refer to its white peak that is pitched in or against the sky like a tent, cf. the description of Yarḥbrog G.yumtsho's consort Mt. "Gangbzang" in note 18 above. However, as mentioned above, *ḥbubs* can by no means mean 'be pitched'. One possibility might be that the inagentive verb could have had the additional meaning 'to span (itself) like a roof or tent (over sth.)'. Another possibility is to treat Mt. Gyaŋto as the AGENT of the transitive action (and the verb form as stem I of the agentive verb). A third, but perhaps less likely possibility could be that the compound is a 'polar compound', that is, formed of antonyms (*bla* in the sense of 'protruding' or 'rising

high', *ḥbubs* in the sense of being 'concave' or 'reaching low'), and expresses thus an abstract concept of volume or massiveness (cf. Goldstein 1994: 16).

In any case, the interpretation as a compound should lead to the elimination of the verb *ḥbubs* and its clause (v184) from the annotation.

<62> *baŋso*.

Not necessarily a tomb, cf. note 84.

<63> *gšegso*.

Given the contrastive context, I would expect a present tense form, more specifically, the mere stem I, corresponding to the preceding clause v186 (cf. Zeisler 2004, part II, 3.4.6.2). The honorific verb *gšegs*, however, has only one stem, so that the play with the stems does not become visible.

<64> v190.

It is not entirely clear who the agent is. One could have expected a continuation of the contrasting between Ñakhyi and Šakhyi. This would also be corroborated by the fact that in clauses v187 and v188, Šakhyi is said to take revenge and further by the fact that the honorific verb *gšegs* had been used for Šakhyi, which might indicate his higher status in relation to his brother, although not with necessity: while Ñakhi's hosting of the funeral repast is expressed by the non-honorific verb *gtoŋ*, his being the prince of Rkoŋpo is expressed with the honorific copula *lags*. Linguistically, however, the omitted argument should by preference refer to the last mentioned 'subject'. References to previous 'subjects' are not generally precluded, especially when two AGENTs of different status or different importance for the narrative act upon each other (in the case of differing status, 'subject'-hood can be discovered by lexical means, otherwise, it is mostly a matter of common sense).

In our case the last mentioned subject is particularly highlighted by the topic marker *ni*. It can be expected that by its special emphasis as well as its introductory character, the topic marker blocks a reference beyond the emphasised argument. From this it would follow that Ñakhyi is the agent. One should compare the Tibetan clauses to similar English sentences, where the subject is continued with zero or the anaphoric pronoun *he*. If one says: *A did x, B did y and then (he) did z*, it would be quite clear that B is also the actor of z, even more so if we emphasise the contrast: *A, for his part, did x, B, by contrast, did y, and (he) did z*. Tibetan cross-clausal references function pretty much along the same lines (that is, they

follow the principles of communicative economy and clarity), except that ana-
phoric pronouns are used much less frequently than in English. The problem was
noted already by Wylie (1963: 99), who opts for the solution "that there was *no*
change of subject" (emphasis in the original). Against Macdonald's (1971: 226)
critique, his arguments are well founded.

Only one line earlier, OTC shows a similar hesitation: Ñakhyi or both brothers
are referred to in a compound as *Ñalha*, where *lha*, either by itself or as an abbre-
viation for *lhasras* 'son of the gods', is obviously the regal title. The compound
could be read either as a *karmadhāraya* compound 'Ña[kyi], who is like a deity'
or as a *dvandva* compound 'Ña[kyi] and the Deity', and only the following nu-
meral *gñis* 'both' indicates that the second meaning is intended. Unexpected as
the title appears, it looks as if the name of the second brother was avoided, cer-
tainly not without a reason. Both lacunae indicate that there must have been a
contradiction in the various traditions, which the compiler could not solve. The
confusion continues through the later traditions, which also know of a third son
Byakhri as further candidate for the throne, e.g. also in the *Ladvags Rgyalrabs*,
while oral traditions from Ladakh name Ñakhri (Ñakhyi) as the first king of the
Spurgyal lineage, and *the* king from whom the Ladakhi royal lineage as well as
some minor lineages claim their descend. As Haarh (1969: 158f.) points out con-
vincingly, the name Ñakhri is only an orthographic variant of Gñaḥkhri, the name
of the primordial king. There are many other indications that the latter is but a
mythical reduplication of Ñakhyi, which, from this perspective, appears to be the
most likely candidate for being identical with the first king of the Spurgyal lin-
eage, Spulde Guŋrgyal.

<center><65> v191.</center>

Here and in the following, the omitted 'subject' may be well the future ruler *and*
his army. But since it is the future ruler who is in the focus of interest, it may be
justified to continue the sentences in the singular.

<center><66> *yulyab*.</center>

Disregarding the order of the elements of a *tatpuruṣa* compound (see also n. 46
above), Hill translates this as 'fatherland'. But the 'land of the father' *father's
land* is *phaḥi yul*, accordingly, the corresponding compound 'fatherland' is *phayul*,
and the honorific form would be *yabyul.

Macdonald suggests a reading 'seigneur et père du pays', but this interpretation
is grammatically not possible. *yulyabgyi rje* is formally a possessive phrase, the
literal reading thus 'lord of the land-patrons'. One could think that the honorific

form *yab* indicates some elevated status in the social hierarchy. *yab* can have the connotation of sheltering (TETT), which I tried to catch with the word patron (derived from the Latin word for father). As providing some protection should have been the prominent task of even a petty ruler, this could have licensed the use of *yab* for apparently second-rank persons.

On the other hand, the possessive phrase could also be analysed as a restrictive relative clause: *the lord who is a patron for the country*. I would think that *yul(yab)* here and *dog(yab)* in clauses v194 and v218 were parts of a translational compound, see note 68 below.

<center><67> *pyolpyolgyi-chaḥo*.</center>

The reduplication functions as an intensifier, with respect to either duration or iteration. While to Hill (2006a: 97, n. 42), "the use of the genetive to connect two verbs seems odd", I should argue that the morpheme {*kyi*} here corresponds to the connective morpheme {*kyi*}, which we can find in modern Lhasa Tibetan and which seems to be related to, if not identical with, the connective morpheme {*kyin*} of OT and CT. It can be used to form a sort of present participle as well as complex periphrastic expressions, here with the verb *cha* that apparently signals a future event (cf. the use of *ḥgro*). In non-finite as well as in the complex finite forms, the morpheme might indicate duration or iteration (cf. Zeisler 2004: 286f.).

The aspirated labial *ph* is often written as a non-aspirate *p* when combined with a subscripted letter (including vowel *u*). This has nothing to with phonology but rather with institutionalised laziness. Btsanlha paraphrases the verb accordingly as *phyolphyollam / brospa* (TETT), while Bacot & Toussaint (1940: 127, n. 5), Wang & Bsodnams Skyid (1992: 80, n. 150), and Gñaḥgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan (1995: 23, n. 25) emend *byolbyol*. Haarh (1969: 453: 29 takes *pyol* as a derivation of *ḥbyol*. The meaning is thus either 'run away' or 'turn aside'. Gñaḥgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan adds the nuance that the nomads sneak away like snakes, or flee the snakes, of the wilderness (*phyiḥbrog dgongyi sbrul bros*) and further suggests the alternative interpretation that while the nomads stay, their cattle has freed itself from the tethering rope and the corrals got emptied (*phyiḥbroggi gdaŋthaglas phyugzog brospas lhasra stoŋs*). Wang & Bsodnams Skyid further interpret *ḥbroggdeŋs* as *ḥbroggnas* 'nomad's abode', but then it remains unclear who is fleeing. Perhaps they also think of the livestock? This interpretation would definitely play down the political dimension of the passage.

<68> *dogyab*.

Hill's translation as 'father's ears (of grain)', once again, does not take into account the order of the elements. Besides, the notion of 'ears' or rather 'pods' (*dogpa*) belonging to the father is not very convincing. Equally, I am not really able to imagine what a more correct 'pods' father' could be. The only possibility remaining is to read *dogyab* as 'father(s) of the earth', as originally suggested by Bacot & Toussaint. This is corroborated by two parallel passages in Ms. 249 (P.t.1286) ll. 30-32 and l. 43 referring to *Ñagkhri btsanpo* (the first):

> $ || *lhagnamgyi-steŋnas gšegspaḥ* || *gnamlhabkyi-blana* || *Yablha Bdagdrug bžugspaḥi sras* | *gcen gsum gcuŋ gsumna* | *Khriḥi Bduntshigsdaŋ bdun* | *Khriḥi Bduntshigskyi sras* | *Khri Ñagkhri btsanpoḥ* | *sadogla yulyabkyi rje* | *dogyabkhyi chardu gšegssoḥ* ||
> 'Having come from above the sky of the gods, the son of *Yablha Bdagdrug*, who dwells aloft the heavenly space: *Khriḥi Bduntshigs*, [the one] between (lit. at) three elder brothers [and] three younger brothers, [thus] seven with *Khriḥi Bduntshigs*, [his] son: *Khri Ñagkhri btsanpo*, the lord who is the patron of the country in the earthly narrowness, [he] came like the rain as (lit. of/ which is) the patron of the (narrow) earth.'

> *Khriḥi Bduntshigskyi sras* || *Lde Ñagkhri btsanpo* | *sadogla yulyabkyi rje dogyab-kyi chardu gšegsnas* ||
> 'The son of *Khriḥi Bduntshigs*: *Lde Ñagkhri btsanpo*, the lord who is the patron of the country in the earthly narrowness, [he] came like the rain as (lit. of/ which is) the patron of the (narrow) earth.'

   Haarh (1969: 312) assumes that there should be a difference between the two compounds *yulyab* and *dogyab*. But as Hummel (1994: 172, n. 34) points out, *dog* might be originally a Žaŋžuŋ word, meaning something like 'domicile, abode' (*Wohnplatz, Aufenthaltsort*), cf. also ZhEH, where *dog* is listed in the phrase *na.slas dogla*, paraphrased as *sayi gžima* 'earthly residence', with *ne.slas* meaning 'earth, ground' or 'earth goddess (*sadaŋ saḥi lhamo*, ZhNN). *dog* corresponds thus to *yul* in the sense of 'inhabited land, village'. Most probably then, we deal here with a split up translational compound **yuldog* 'habitation'.
   In the context of the song, one may, nevertheless, suspect a subtle contrast between *yul* and *dog*. The latter word may perhaps more specifically stand for the ground, the agricultural base for which the rain is even more essential than the ruler. Mountain deities are the forces who are responsible for the sending of the right amount of water at the right time, and for all the destruction too much or too

little water and water at the wrong time might cause. While this function is basi-
cally connected with the snowmelt, the picture here apparently implies that the
mountain deities are also responsible for the right amount of precipitation. This
could perhaps reflect the influence of Chinese ideologies where the ruler is re-
sponsible for a more general cosmic balance. One might thus read *dogyab* in the
sense of a *sabdag*. But apart from this, I cannot follow Haarh's involved argu-
mentation, notably not with respect to the alleged abstract and concrete functions
of the verb stems and the identification of *dog* 'earth' with stem I of the verb I:
ḥdogs, II: *btags*, III: *gdags*, IV: *thogs* 'bind, fasten', and of *bdag* 'owner' with its
stem II, whatever the underlying etymological relations might be. Note that the al-
leged agentive function of stem II, is, according to traditional Tibetan grammar,
exactly the function of stem I, and this is also corroborated by and large by the
usage of the stems in Tibetan texts.

One can observe, in the first parallel passage, a contrast between *gnamlhab*, the
wide space of the heavenly realms and the *sadog*, the comparatively narrowness
and crowdedness on earth, reflecting perhaps the contrast between the wide steppe
as the original homeland of the ruler and the narrow valleys and side valleys in
Central Tibet. In the compound *dogyab*, the first element is ambivalent as being
derived from *dogma* 'earth' (or ultimately as being the Žaŋžuŋ word *dog* 'settle-
ment') and *dogpo* 'narrow'. It might be this inherent connotation of narrowness
why *dogyab* and not *sabdag* (and *yulbdag*) is used.

P.t.1038, ll. 13-17 has an interesting variant, where, according to my under-
standing, the middle brother of the Khri first stays in the six-fold *Saga* (Libra)
constellation (*Saga dog drugdu*, cf. Macdonald 1971: 215; OTDO renders this as
"sa (14) gdog", despite the line break after *ga*, and despite the fact that this read-
ing does not improve the interpretation). There he is met by a delegation of minis-
ters, priests, and other domestics in search for a ruler:

> *gnamrimpa bcugsumgyi-stengna | Khri-barla Bduntshig | šes bgyi || gnamgi
> lhalas | Sag(a)*[a] *dog drugdu || «ḥgreng ḥgonaggi (·) rjemyedgi (·) rŋeḥ dud
> rŋogchag blamyedkyi blar» | blonpo Lho-Rŋegs | bonpo Mtshe-Gco |
> phyagtshang Ša-Spug || «myirje» lhadaŋ bdud- | -du brgyisnas*[b] *|| yul Bodka
> g.yag drugdu byon žes mchi ||*
>
> It is said that … [from] aloft the thirteenth level of the sky, the one to be
> called The Middle of the Seven, the In-Between of the Khri, from the gods
> of the sky, [he descended] to the six ?spheres of the *Saga* (Libra) constella-
> tion;[a] «(as) lord for the upright, the black-headed, the ones without lord and
> as life-support for the bent, the maned ones, the ones without life-support»:
> when the ministers, Lho and Rŋeg, the priests Mtshe and Gco, and the
> domestics Ša and Spug requested among gods and demons «a lord for the

men», he came (down) to the six ??valleys (lit. precipices)[c] [of] the land Bodka.

[a]   At the end of the line, the *tsheg* seems to be missing. It is also not resumed in the next line as in other instances. Uray (1966: 250) and Macdonald (1971: 217) translate *saga dog drugdu* as '(descended) to earth' and '(il est venue) … sur la terre en six divisions', implicitly reading *sadog*. However, with the rather involved wording (or perhaps misplaced lines) it is all but clear whether the verb *byon* operates also over this NP, and if not, what kind of verb had been omitted. It is also not self-evident that a supposed *sadog drug* is synonymous with the *yul Bodka g.yag drug*.

[b]   *brgyis* appears to be an old spelling for stem II of the irregular verb I: *bgyid*, II: *bgyis*, III: *bgyi*, IV: *gyis*. One could have thus expected the regular paradigm 2a, namely I: **brgyid*, II: *brgyis ~ rgyis*, III: *brgyi*, IV: **rgyis*. In the form *brgyibaḥ* the verb appears also in line 6, were Macdonald (p. 216) takes it as an equivalent for *bgyi* 'to be called'. However, the preceding NP *lha Kuspyi Serbžis* is in the ergative and is thus the agent not the patient of the verb. Functionally, thus, *brgyi* represents stem I. There are two interpretations possible:

a) The deity Kuspyi Serbži commands something, and the content of the speech follows immediately afterwards (verbal nouns of *verba dicendi* can have an introducing function). The content of the command would be that the first Tibetan ruler will be the master of all *Masaŋs*, the one who rules over all that exists, i.e. over the whole world, and that he will be the Commander of all Commanders or the Phiao of all Phiao.s (*Masaŋs thamcadgi bdagpo* || *sridpa kunla mṅaḥ mdzadpaḥ* || *Phya/uḥ* Phya/u lags; see note 35 above as well as Zeisler forthcoming, chapter 4 § 2.4.4 for the name *Phiao* and it relation to the verb *smra* (**mrao*) 'speak', for its transliteration see also note 80 below).

b) The deity Kuspyi Serbži would be characterised as performing the act described by the verb *brgyi*, and it would be the master of all *Masaŋs* (l. 7), and the one who rules over all that exists, i.e. over the whole world. Accordingly, the verb *brgyi* should be related to the performance of power.

Rendering the second occurrence of *brgyis* in l. 16 as *brgyes*, a form that is not attested elsewhere, Macdonald is free to assign the verb a different meaning. She suggests that the lord came down to earth when gods and demons were 'fighting' each other (p. 217). This is grammatically completely impossible. As soon as two partners of a mutual action are rendered collectively (with the comitative case joined to the first member), the whole collective expression becomes the sole argument, regularly in the absolutive (pattern 01). Even if this sole argument should be case-marked for special emphasis, it could only receive the ergative marker as 'subject' case marker (pattern 13), never the locative-purposive. Furthermore, the royal ideology concerning the descent from heaven does not know of a fight between gods and demons, but of an instable situation down on earth (the *topos* of a fight between a god and a demon seems to be restricted to the Gesar epic, while other *topoi* of the descent are shared by both mythologies). The six clans mentioned correspond to the delegation, which welcomed the first Tibetan king and which, according to different variants, may or may not have been in search of a ruler for the rulerless country. In this particular passage, the delegation appears to be searching for a ruler. The verb *brgyis* should thus be related with this quest, either expressing the search or the demand. Given the immediate reaction of the deity, and the context of the

~~or the demand. Given the immediate reaction of the deity, and the context~~ of the first ap-
pearance of the verb, I expect it to express a speech act.

Haarh (1969: 307) takes *brgyis = bgyis* in its sense of 'acted': "*Myi-rje* (The Ruler of
Men) acted as *lHa* and *bDud*, and the country appeared as the *Bod-ka-g'yag-drug*".
While grammatically possible, the translation does not really make sense, particularly if
taken in the whole context, which Haarh has omitted (one may further ask whether the
honorific verb *byon* 'arrived' could be used in the sense of *byuŋ* 'appeared' with a non-
human entity of no particular rank, here a country).

As far as Old Tibetan is concerned, one can find two more instances of the archaic
verb form in the documents from Eastern Turkestan (Takeuchi 1997/1998, 82 und 141).
In the sales contract 82 *rgyis* (r8) alternates with *bgyis* (r5), which Takeuchi (1995: 287)
translates in both cases with 'it is decided'. In the fragmentary letter 143 it appears as
b\rgyis[pa] (r3), where both 'acted' and 'spoke' might be possible. The archaic form ap-
pears occasionally also in early Classical Tibetan texts, where it seems to have the same
functions as the 'standard' form *bgyid* etc. (Helga Uebach).

However, a simple, unspecific *verbum dicendi*, as represented by *byed* and *bgyid* in
Classical Tibetan, would be in need of a content argument, namely the speech (or, in a
figura etymologica, a noun representing the speech). The speech could either precede or
follow the verb. In the latter case, the verb may appear as verbal noun in order to indicate
the beginning of a direct speech. This content argument can only be dropped or be re-
placed by a noun (as part of the proposition) in the case of more specific *verba dicendi*,
such as 'declare, appoint' or 'demand, ask for'. In 1038, l. 17 the content argument is re-
placed by the noun *mirje*, which might indicate that the verb *brgyi, brgyis* originally had
a somewhat more specific meaning than the quite general *bgyid*. It is also possible that
the passage had been taken out of its original context where not only the appropriate
speech was given, but also a verb describing the arrival among the gods and demons. The
original speech seems to have been partly extracted and topicalised. One would have fur-
ther expected a verb for 'to give', so that the original could have been something like
«*ħgreŋ ħgonaggi rjemyedgi rje || dud rŋogchag blamyedkyi blar mirje stsol(du)*».

ᶜ   Reading *g.yaŋ* for *g.yag*.

According to the suggested scenario, the deity is no longer residing in the
upper-most heaven but still in a sphere above the earth, when the delegation to the
gods and other spirits arrives. The descent seems to have involved several stellar
constellations. The seven Khri or rather Dri are themselves a constellation (the
Pleiades, see below n. 84). This would also be in accordance with other royal ge-
nealogies, where the future lord descends through several realms of heaven, and it
would equally match the corresponding narremes of the Gesar epic, where a
single representative of the men arrives at the court of the highest god to ask for
one of his sons as the lord of the men.

In this context, *dog* might be a synonym to *rim* and refer to one of several
planes in the heaven or in the whole cosmos. *sadog* could then be one of the low-
est planes, the plane of earth. If, on the other hand, *dog drug* should be parallel to
the enigmatic *g.yag drug*, one could think of horizontal segmentations, that is,
provinces, instead. It would probably be no coincidence that the future ruler of the
six *g.yag* of Bodka, whatever these *g.yag* might be, a ruler also over the six repre-

sentative clans, was originally residing in a six-fold realm. In that case, *sadog* should be translated as the provinces of the earth. This would also correspond to the alternative rendering of the enigmatic *Bodka g.yag drug* as *Bodka gliŋ drug*. A *dogyab* could thus be the patron of the provinces.

<center><69> *buspur*.</center>

All translations take *spur* to mean 'corpse', but then cannot account for the preceding *bu*, which would yield a 'corpse of the son'. Macdonald similarly thinks that the lines refer in part to the funeral rites. As for Hill's translation, I am unable to understand the intended meaning of his "The seeds [of] the earth and corpse decay". What are *seeds of the earth* (not to speak of *seeds of the corpse*)?

   For Gñaḥgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan (1995: 23, n. 26) *spur* apparently refers to the 'corpse' of the grain. The grain would get rotten and (the ears) would get empty, hence the farmers would be without a good harvest (*sabon rulte khogstoŋdu-rpaste roŋpaḥi lotog malegspa*). The simile would perfectly match the loss of cattle suggested above (see n. 67). But the explanation likewise ignores the syllable *bu*, and it would also not account for the honorific character of *spur*, which could hardly refer to the grain. Hill (2006a: 97, n. 42) suggests that the compound might have something to do with agriculture and could perhaps denote 'chaff'. This implies an emendation from *spur* to *sbunpa* or *sburma*, without again accounting for the element *bu*. Furthermore, how can 'chaff' decay without rain, and is it such a problem, if it does?

   If we cannot avoid an emendation, then *ḥbusbur* 'insects' or 'worms and beetles/ ants' may perhaps be more suitable (cf. also Wang & Bsodnams Skyid 1992: 80, n. 152 who interpret *spur* as an insect called black ant '*sburnag zerbaḥi ḥbutshig*their previous note they had joined *bu* with the preceding *ḥon* from *saḥon*, paraphrasing the resulting *ḥonbu* with *ŋatsho* 'we', which is clearly out of place). Note that *ḥbu* 'insect, worm, maggot' appears as *bu* in the compound *srinbu* 'insect, worm, parasite'. These insects, like the human beings, will definitely have a problem, if the grain does not grow for lack of rain. The verse would then demonstrate that the future ruler, according to the ideal of the good ruler, and according to his cosmic role as a god, is taking care of all beings, even the smallest ones, not only of the mighty chiefs.

<center><70> *khogkhog*.</center>

The verb form possibly belongs to an adjectival I: *ḥkhog*, II: *ḥkhogs* 'be weak from age, decay, wither' (cf. JÄK, BRGY *ḥkhogs*, TETT *ḥkhog ~ ḥkhogs*). The resultative stem II must have been overgeneralised. JÄK's entry shows that the

mere root *khog* may appear in compound forms: *skyakhog* and *sŋokog* 'having a complexion pale or blue from age' (the latter compound with second syllable deaspiration). The same phonological process seems to apply in the case of reduplication and prefixation, cf. also BRGY *khogrgas* 'old', where *khog* probably serves as intensifier. The interpretation as 'rot, decompose' (Haarh, Gñaḥgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan, Hill, see previous note 69) is thus not fully felicitous.

Bacot & Toussaint's reading 'err, wander' is not attested in JÄK and BRGY, it is listed, however, in TETT for the form *ḥkhogs*.

<center><71> *pub*.</center>

Hill (2006a: 97, n. 43, transcription adapted) states that

> *phub* is the past tense of *ḥbubs* 'to cover up, cover over.' Haarh translates « The hundred male Loŋam took a hundred copper vessels, Put them over their heads, and sought death by precipitation. » (1969: 405). One could first make a grammatical objection to this interpretation, the Loŋam are in the absolutive and not the ergative case, and *ḥbubs* expects the ergative (though perhaps not when used reflexively). More importantly this interpretation makes little sense. In the face of the enemy the Loŋam subject themselves to an odd sort of suicide. It makes better sense that in recompense for the fate of Dridgum Brtsanpo they have the pots put over their heads, and then because of lake [sic.] of vision they fall to their deaths.

While I cannot preclude a causative interpretation, I should think that the reflexive interpretation makes a lot of sense. The Loŋams are depicted as ridiculous cowards who, instead of fighting, jump into death; and they are so coward that they cannot even bear the sight of where they are jumping. Alternatively, one could perhaps describe them, equally ridiculously, as trying to protect their heads with pots against the swords, but nevertheless jumping into death. A more compassionate interpretation might be that the Loŋam had neither weapons nor armours or were taken by surprise, and although they tried to protect themselves with mere household implements, they eventually run into death. The last interpretation would probably better match the fate of their women (cf. note 72 below). Note that the verb *ḥbubs* does not simply mean 'cover', but rather to 'set up a shelter (roof or tent)'. As for the grammatical argument: there are several reasons why an ergative marker can be omitted. Reflexivity could be one. The second is that the topic marker *ni* often (although not necessarily) leads to the drop of a case marker. Finally, the clause in question is embedded, so that the NP is linked with the following intransitive verb.

<72> *ŋoggo*.

BRGY paraphrases this verb as either *non* (sub *ŋoggo*) or *ḥgro* 'go' (=so*ŋna*; sub *ŋogna*). *non* is the resultative and/ or *potentialis* form of *gnon* 'suppress', with which it seems to be commonly confounded. BRGY defines *non* as *spa ḥkhumspaḥaŋ*⸺*pa* 'be discouraged' or, as CDTD translates 'to be timorous, cowardly'. TETT gives the inagentive meaning of *non* as 'be oppressed, burdened'. Haarh suggests the meaning 'precipitate oneself', possibly because of the parallelism to the behaviour of their spouses, but in the accompanying note (Haarh 1969: 453, n. 28) he further attempts to construct a semantic link with *dŋo* 'shore, bank' and *ŋogs* 'slope, shore'. Both words do not necessitate the connotation of a precipice. Particularly *ŋogs* may have the additional meanings 'port', 'fort', 'entrance', or simply 'side' (cf. TETT).

Bacot & Toussaint and Wang & Bsodnams Skyid (1992: 80, n. 154), followed by Hill, suggest the meaning 'flee'. Fleeing is certainly the best solution for 'discouraged' or 'coward' people. I wonder, however, why then the ordinary word *ḥbro* 'flee' is not used, similarly, why not *non* for 'be oppressed' or perhaps 'be overcome'. Could it not be that the word in question signals the common fate of women in war times? And could it not be that the word was lost because it actually was a taboo word? This interpretation would at least explain why the women were trying to protect their breasts with large iron pans. Cf. also the apparent transitive-causative counterpart *sŋog*, explained as 'search through, dig out' in BRGY and other Tibetan dictionaries, but also as 'criticise bluntly' in DYGB, and as 'vex, annoy' in JÄK. The Loŋam women should then have been quite 'embarrassed', to say the least.

Macdonald's suggestion that the Loŋam women had committed suicide (for *ŋog*!) by *frapping* (for *bchar*!) their breasts with iron pans surpasses my imaginative capability. Similar unlikely is her idea (in that case at least supplied with a question mark) that the male Loŋam had killed themselves by *frapping* (for *pup*!) pots on their head, although this might more easily lead to the desired result. Note that the verb *lceb* does not simply mean 'commit suicide (by whatever means)' but basically 'jump down (into a precipice, water, or fire)' (cf. BRGY) with the common, but (for some speakers) not absolutely necessary connotation 'in order to die'. It could not be used for *cutting one's throat*, *hanging oneself*, or, for that matter, *banging one's head till death*.

<73> *mnaŋsu bchad*.

Haarh translates this passage as '*Dud* were brought under yoke', likening the expression to the collocation *dbaŋsu gcod* 'subjugate' (p. 454, n. 29). For the use of *gcod* see below. Hill (2006a: 98, n. 45) who rejects this interpretation and translates as 'the cattle they took as wealth', nevertheless adduces a passage from OL 0751, 38a2-4, where we find almost the same phrase *mnaŋs bcadpa* in the context of an enumeration of what able rulers and ministers do to their enemies. This would rather corroborate Haarh's intuition, although with a slightly different undertone: 'confiscate'.

Macdonald renders the whole phrase freely as 'tue le bétail'. She probably follows Uray (1966: 254), who translates the passage as 'the bent ones, being killed, were butchered.' In his note 21, he explains *mnaŋs* as a past tense form of an unattested verb **noŋ* or **gnoŋ*, which he takes as transitive-causative form of **noŋ*, *noŋs* 'die'. But his interpretation seems to be unlikely for several reasons. First of all, one might wonder why it should be mentioned explicitly that the animals were killed before being slaughtered or rather cut into pieces, and if so, why such an uncommon word should be used. Secondly the form *mnaŋsu*, if representing a verb, at all, does not allow an interpretation in terms of anteriority (having or being X-ed), but rather points to a posterior event, aimed at ('in order to X'). Thirdly, as Hill (2006a: 98, n. 45) rightly comments, Uray's translation misses the parallelism with the preceding clause.

BRGY defines *mnaŋspa* as 1. *nor loŋsspyod* 'wealth, property' and 2. *sriddam ḥjigrten* 'dominion or world'. The second meaning would support the interpretation 'confiscated *for the state*', the first meaning the interpretation as 'confiscated *as* (his personal) *wealth*'. But one could also think of a combined interpretation 'confiscated as state property'. Bacot & Toussaint's translation 'les animaux [furent] emmenés au royaume' is as close or free a translation of this collocation as Hill's 'took as wealth'.

Apparently, the verb *gcod* 'cut' can be used in the sense of 'single out, separate' with respect to livestock and other items of wealth. Cf. also P.t.1042, l. 54-56:

> *skugšen khagtsaŋ gnyisla | gciggis || chibs-|-las gcig bcadde | g.yaŋrtar bgraŋ || dkarmodaŋ | g.yaglas gcig bcadde | donpor | bgraŋ || skugšen gciggi* [!] *dkorlas sna gcig bcade || phugsnordu bgraŋ |*
> 'For/ From the two, the royal priest [and] the priest-in-charge,[a] one [person] singled out one from the horses and denoted (lit. counted) it as propitious horse. From the white ones (ewes) and the yaks [he] singled out one [each] and denoted them as essential ones,[b] one of the royal priests singled out one

specimen from the property (/ ??[he] singled out one specimen from the property of the royal priest) and denoted it as the ultimate riches.'[c]

[a]   *khagtsaŋ*. Bellezza (2008: 455) suggests the reading 'of individualised roles'.

[b]   *donpo*. Bellezza (ibid.) has 'divine sheep'; the entries in TETT show that according to David Holler's study on *tshethar*, the words *donpo* and *donmo* are nowadays used for the 'liberated' sheep, set aside from consumption, another type of 'sacrifice'.

[c]   *phugsnor*. According to Bellezza (ibid., n. 317) "the essential or vital wealth of a household, which is ritually enshrined in a special receptacle"; TETT (Ives Waldo) translates this as "the essential wealth of the goal, trump card, last resort".

Lalou (1952) translates *gcod* almost everywhere as 'choisir' or 'trier'. According to Bellezza (ibid., n. 315), the verb *gcod* is used among present-day nomads "to describe the separating of individual animals from the herd".

However, it might be more appropriate to interpret the verb *gcod* in such cases as 'decide upon', corresponding to its use in the classical and modern, somewhat opaque collocation *thag gcod* 'decide', lit. 'cut a rope'. After reading Helga Uebach's article on the replacement of tallies by paper documents (and unfortunately not when reading her draft version), where she points to the quite surprising fact that the earliest mentioning of 'paper' as *šog* comes a century after paper had started to be used in the administration (Uebach 2008: 64), it appears to me that the collocation *thag gcod* derives from the phrase *thaŋ gcod* 'cutting an unrolled document (in order to execute it)' as we might find it at various points in P.t.1042:

mdadšidrgyalgyis mŋaḥthaŋ bcad-de || gtadtu gnaŋbaḥi rnams | bdud gcado l 101f.)

'The *rgyal* [for] the funeral ceremony, having executed (lit. cut) a register of chattels[a] [and having ?confirmed][b] all that was granted in order to be handed over, will (have to) execute[c] the *bdud*.'[d]

[a]   Lalou (1952: 353, n. 3 et passim), who has the disadvantage of being a pioneer, opts for 'riches' based on an entry in Desgodins with *mŋaḥthaŋcan* 'rich'. This does not seem to be a very safe base, however. All other dictionaries would give us the basic meaning 'power, dominion, control' for *mŋaḥthaŋ*. Again, this seems to be a secondary development, due to the loss of the meaning *thaŋ* 'scroll'. BRGY adds notions of 'merit' (*dgetshogs*; 'accumulation (of merit?)' (*bsagsrgyab*), and 'inheritance, share, fate' (*bgoskal*; *laŋoskos*). GShS additionally lists 'prosperity'. But in the case of meanings associated with wealth, this might well be a comparatively late development, based perhaps on the fact that power and richness often (if not always) go hand in hand. In this connection it might be quite telling that GShS gives *mŋaḥthaŋloŋsspyod* as 'rich and powerful' and not, as to be expected, the other way round.
The things to be used in the funeral are listed immediately after this passage (ll. 102-105), and this enumeration is opened with the words *gtaŋdu stsoldpa ni |* 'what had been bestowed in order to give', not with the word *mŋaḥthaŋ*. This indicates that we have to dif-

ferentiate between the items to be sacrificed and their listing in a document. The enumeration is actually an inserted explanation, and the topic of making a list or document is resumed again in ll. 105-107, see below.

A similar collocation, *mŋaḥ gsol* is listed with the meanings 'name, nominate, appoint, declare as', 'praise', and 'congratulate' in JÄK. Particularly the first meaning would indicate that the word *mŋaḥ* did not only mean 'power, might, control', but possibly also something like an 'authoritative utterance' or 'utterance from an authority' as well as a 'listing, register of items'. Since *mŋaḥ* may further denote 'acquisitions' (TETT) or 'belongings' (JÄK), one could take *mŋaḥthaŋ* as a 'register of possessions'. According to Helga Uebach, this last meaning would be corroborated by the usage of the word in Nelpa Paṇḍita's chronic.

[b]   The verb *spadde* is to be added, cf. l. 110f. where we read *gtaŋdu stsold- | -paḥi rnams | spadde bdud bcadnas |* Lalou reads this as 'cacher', which would imply several emendations as the verb for 'hide' is I *sbed*, II: *sbas*, III: *sba*, IV: *sbos*. The verb *spad* is not attested in any dictionary, but in four documents it appears in connection with seals and signatures, cf. P.t.1083 v1, P.t.1089 r84, P.t.1111, l. 27, P.t.1120 r14; in the former three documents it appears in the very last line of the document. It may thus have the meaning 'confirmed' and could be related to the verb I/IV: *dpyod*, II/III *dpyad* 'examine', in which case, it might have shown the same *ablaut* pattern: I/IV: **spod*, II/III: *spad*. If, on the other hand, *spad* should be related to the verb *smra* 'speak', we should not expect an *ablaut*.

[c]   *gcad*. Stem III and other future tense constructions can be used for habits. The choice of such constructions may emphasise the expectation that the habit is to continue in future, the choice of stem III, more particularly, may signal an obligation.

[d]   The notion of *bdud* remains unclear in this context. It seems to be the name for another register.

rgyalgyis thaŋ bcadde khram | gnyis bgyiste || gcig ni žaḥbriŋrjebo thaŋ chenpola gtad || khram gcig ni skyibslugla | gtad || (ll. 105-107)
'The *rgyal* cut the document (*thaŋ*), made two tallies, one [of which] he handed over as the main (lit. great[er part of] the) document [to][a]/ fastened to the main document [of][a] the chief attendant,[b]/ ?and the chief attendant fastened it to the main document.[a] The other one [he =the *rgyal*/ ?the chief attendant] fastened to the psychopomp sheep.'

[a]   I would think that a case marker is missing here, a genitive marker, a locational marker, or even an ergative marker after *žaḥbriŋrjebo*. The loss of a dative-locative marker could have been triggered by the following adverbial phrase. While the double absolutive is regular with the verb *stsal* (cf. note 12), to my knowledge there does not seem to be evidence for its use with other verbs of giving and the following clause has the expected construction with the dative-locative. I do not really think that the chief attendant could be the subject. The drop of the ergative marker would not be well motivated in a context where the actions of different persons are contrastively enumerated. But one might perhaps think of a setting where an attendant always continues and finishes the work of his superior, and thus his agentship might be backgrounded.

^b   The possible analysis as *dvandva* compound: 'attendant and lord' might be ruled out, since higher ranking persons should be mentioned first.

In this case, even Lalou (1952: 357), who otherwise prefers to read *thaŋ* as 'valeur', by translating *thaŋ chenpo* as 'grand registre' refers to it as a document. It is quite apparent that the *thaŋ chenpo* stands in relation to one of the two *khram*, apparently a *khramma* 'tally mother', although one might still argue that the *khram* serves as a symbol for the 'values' registered on it.

Further up, namely l. 53, just before the example for *gcod* = 'single out', given above, we find the following passage:

rgyalgyis kyaŋ | mŋaḥthaŋ bcad mŋaḥthaŋdu ḥdusso ḥtshal || bzaŋ-l-ŋan rimpar plagste || ḥodod bod ||

'The *rgyal* executed (lit. cut) a register of chattels (and) whatever^a was included (lit. had come together)^b in the declarative document/ register of chattels, [its] (moral) quality was read out^c one by one and the specific (*ḥo*) equivalent (/ payment) (*dod*) was announced.'^d

^a   Literally, 'whatever is desired'. Like *-o c(h)og*. lit. 'whatever may be', *-o ḥts(h)al(d)* serves as an all-inclusive totaliser. The definiteness marker or demonstrative pronoun *-o*, as in all other cases where it follows a verb, serves as a nominaliser.

^b   For the meaning 'inhere', 'be included' or 'subsumed' cf. TETT and GShS. The focus seems to be on the result of the preceding act of registering, not on the act itself. Lalou takes *ḥtshal* literally as meaning 'commanded', the subordinated clauses accordingly as a command: 'Choisissez les *mŋaḥthaŋ*! Rassemblez-vouz auprès des *mŋaḥthaŋ*!' (transliteration adjusted). But it is not verisimilar that the people should be commanded to assemble at the riches only after having chosen from them (*bcad*; stem II with the function of anteriority).

^c   Lalou reads *blaŋs* for *plags*. But this implies two emendations, which are not at all necessitated. That the verb *klog* 'read' has the 'irregular' stem II *blags* in Old Tibetan is meanwhile well known (de Jong 1973). Less known is perhaps the general assumption among historical linguists that the root of the verb, √*lag*, must have had an unvoiced lateral (cf. also Hahn 1999), which triggered the extraordinary unvoiced realisation of the regular prefix *g-* as *k-*. Since the *b-* prefix has an inherently unvoiced character, turning voiced root consonants into unvoiced ones (Zeisler 2004: 865, n. 335), there was no necessity to render it as *p-*, but this nevertheless happened, perhaps in order to discriminate the cluster with an unvoiced lateral from an ordinary combination with a voiced lateral. The best evidence for this are the Old Tibetan variant spellings *phlags* and *plhags* as noted by de Jong (1973: 311, with further references).

^d   Lalou renders this last phrase as 'il appelle à l'aide'. While the compound *ḥodod* is usually given as 'lamentation' or 'cry for help', particularly in combination with the verb *ḥbod*, I do not think that this is intended here in a quasi-bureaucratic setting. If the *rgyal* really needed assistance in setting apart certain donations, he would certainly have had helpers. And in such case, he would also not have been in need to 'cry out for help' like in an emergency, but would just have given a command. I would further think that given

the grandeur of the burial, and the many things to be set apart for offering, the *rgyal* would just have been busy with this task, and would not have been able to even think about lamenting. As an officiant he would not typically have an emotional relation with the defunct. If there should have been professional lamenters at such a funeral, such people would certainly not have handled the sacrifices. I would thus prefer to analyse the compound as *ḥoḥi dod* 'equivalent of that specific [item]', much as *deḥi dus* can be contracted into *dedus* 'that time'. *ḥo* or *ḥu* is a comparatively infrequent demonstrative pronoun or definiteness marker (not so infrequent after clauses, where it seems to have a resumptive function, comparable, perhaps, to Skr. *iti*), surviving, however, in a few western varieties, often in combination with other pronouns, such as Ladakhi /ote/ *ḥode* 'that very'.

While the exact meaning of *mŋaḥthaŋ* is difficult to establish, it is clear from the context that neither a dominion nor a ruler's power was cut into pieces. It also seems to be quite unlikely, semantically as well as contextually, that *items of wealth* were singled out and then *accumulated as items of wealth*. Similarly, if we disregard the totalising function of *-o tshal*, it remains questionable who should gather *at the items of wealth*, and for what particular purpose. On the other hand, there would be no problem if various items *came together on*, or simply were *contained in*, a document, a document, which had been *cut* or in any other way *executed*. While items (of wealth) were, in fact, singled out in the following lines (54-56), namely a horse, a sheep, a yak, and some inanimate objects (see above), here, something written down in a document was read out aloud (*plags*). This announcement apparently served to add value to the items given, by stating (or praising) their quality.

The word *thaŋ* is apparently the same as *thaŋ* 'plain (land)', and we also find it in *thaŋka*, and in *bkaḥthaŋ* 'order' or *(bkaḥ)thaŋyig* 'decree'. Corresponding to the notion of a 'plain', it seems to have designated any flat, unrolled document, whether of cloth (like a *thaŋka*), leather, paper, or even metal. While it may well be that the element *thag* replaced the word *thaŋ*, because the meaning of the latter had become opaque, the interchange of final *-g* and *-ŋ* is not unheard of (it is due to the same sound law that is described in notes 12 (c), 13, and 35) and a rope, *thagpa* is ultimately likewise an item that is rolled up for storage and unrolled for usage. It seems thus that in the early stages of the Tibetan administration, official documents were cut into (asymmetric?) parts for the purpose of verification or identification. They may or may not have constituted tallies in the technical sense. From this practice it would be easy to understand how the meaning 'decide (upon)' could develop. This derived meaning could easily be transferred to other collocations as in our present case.

<74> v209-v213.

Macdonald thinks that the song has something to do with the funeral rites, while Bacot & Toussaint and many Tibetan scholars (cf. Gñaḫgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan 1995: 23, n. 27) take the preceding Loŋam episode as an act of revenge, which is resumed by this song. Their interpretations of the following difficult words or passages are guided by this assumption. This assumption overlooks the fact that the corpse deposited (*btab*) in clause v211 (l. 58) has the honorific form *spur* and thus refers to the emperor's corpse, not to the slain enemies. The same holds if *spu* in clause v213 (l. 58) should be emended as *spur*.

The song may well refer to the assault upon the Loŋam. The initial boasting of the singer with his ability as a perfect hunter who does not need distance weapons, such as arrows, to reach the birds (or men?) and hares, but can kill all of them almost by hand (with the tip of the lance and the tip of the boot) should, nevertheless, be understood as a warning to the lesser lords.

<75> *roro*.

According to Gñaḫgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan (1995: 23, n. 27) *roro* would be simply a reduplication indicating the largeness of the cadaver, in his paraphrase expressed by the reduplication of the adjectival *che*: *byaro chechena* 'in(to) the very large cadaver'. In his translation, Hill follows the idea of a reduplicated word for 'corpse', while neither Bacot & Toussaint nor Haarh translate the second syllable.

While I do not see how the largeness of the cadavers could contribute to the meaning of the song, I, furthermore, do not think that the text speaks of the corpses of the prey, but of the prey itself. Dan Martin in TETT mentions an entry in Btsanlha, which defines *roro* as an old expression for 'all': '*thamscad cespaḥi brdarñiŋ*'. Most probably it is related to CT *rere*. There are a few other instances where the vowels *e* and *o* interchange diachronically or synchronically, the most obvious is perhaps *che* 'be big' with the nominal forms *chenpo* and *chenmo*, attested as /cho-/ or /chu-/ in various modern dialects (CDTD). Cf. also the alternation *rjebo* ~ *rjobo* 'lord', note 36 above. Other alternations occurring in OTC are found with the tribal name Lhe ~ Lho and with the general and minister Weŋker ~ Woŋker Žaŋše.

<76> *bya*.

Not being an expert in hunting, I am somewhat surprised that lances were used in hunting *birds*, and not arrows or slingshots. It is of course possible that this ab-

surdity is part of the exaggeration as in the following clause, which is also not to be taken literally. Nevertheless, lances are quite suitable tools for fighting *men*.

<77> *nig*.

~~This might be a dialectal variant of the topic marker *ni*, as it is found in the Shamskat dialects of Ladakh. Cf. also JÄK (sub *ni*), who cites the colloquial form *niŋ*. But whatever the main function, the word here apparently replaces an existential copula.~~ Bacot & Toussaint translate this as 'je les ai tués', disregarding the locative case marker *-na*. The locational meaning of the marker is accounted for in Haarh's translation as 'plunged' and 'thrust', but despite the view of traditional grammar that the *ladon* markers all had the same function and could interchange freely, the locative marker *-na* is typically used only for non-dynamic spatial relations, that is, for the localisation of an entity *at* a certain place, infrequently also for unbounded movements in a certain direction (such as leftwards), but not for any kind of bounded movement *towards* a specific location (this would be the function of the locative-dative *la* or the locative-purposive {*tu*}).

<78> *goŋra*.

The word seems to be related to *goŋ* 'the above' and *goŋma* 'superior, first'. The 'heel' is *rtiŋpa*, from *rtiŋ* 'what is behind', so the tip might be 'what comes first or above'. Bacot & al. translate freely as 'coup de bottes', Haarh gives 'pointed blade', reading *ltam*, instead of *lham*. Without further comment, he suggests (1969: 454, n. 31) a relation between the non-existing word *ltan* (!) and the component ~~sta~~ in *stari* 'axe' and *dgrasta*, an axe with a semi-circular blade (Jim Valby in TETT). A closer look at the manuscript reveals that Haarh is mistaken. Both clusters *lt-* and *lh-* appear at the end of line 10 in the words *deltar* and *lha*. ~~The~~ upper vertical stroke of the *ta* merges with, or continues, the right vertical stroke of the superscript *l-*. The round hook of the *ta* typically starts from the bottom of this prolonged stroke (l. 10, l. 20), so that the bottom of the superscript is connected with the apex of the *ta*. In any case, the hook is placed more or less immediately below the superscript. In the case of *lh*, the head line of the *ha* is identical with the base line of the superscript *l-*, and from the left side of this base line starts first a short vertical stroke, to which is connected another short slanted stroke downwards to the right, to which finally a round hook like that of the *ta* is joined. The clusters thus cannot be easily confounded, and in our case, the distance between the round hook and the superscript is even more prominent. (See also epigraphic notes and illustrations θ. *lham*.)

Haarh further suggests that *ra* might be a mistake for *raŋ*. This would yield a nice parallel to the above *rtse raŋ* and corroborates my interpretation of *goŋ* or *goŋra* as 'point, tip'. Nevertheless, one can never be sure that the lines are composed in strict parallelism, and it is also possible that the emphatic pronoun *raŋ* was added to *rtse* for the sake of the metre, where *goŋra* might be a disyllabic noun of its own right. Hill translates *goŋra* as 'mass of a shoe', taking *goŋpo/bu* 'lump, mass, heap, clot' as base. It is, however, difficult to imagine what a 'lump' of boots could have to do with a (dead) hare. Gñaḥgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan (1995: 23, n. 27) equates *goŋra* with *yuba* 'bootleg', which I am even less able to connect with the killing of a hare.

<center><79> *brlaḥ rduŋs*.</center>

I am not quite sure what Bacot & Toussaint actually meant with their 'j'ai fustigé *sur* les cuisses', since fustiger 'flogging, denouncing' is a transitive verb (the direct object typically being a person). The use of the preposition *sur* is all the more surprising as the Tibetan verb *rduŋ* apparently follows the ergative scheme 08, that is, *brlaḥ* corresponds to a direct object. As it stands, the sentence is incomprehensible to educated French speakers. The next possible activity that Europeans could perform *on(to)* their thighs: 'knee slapping' would be expressed with the preposition *sur*, but with a different verb: *taper sur les cuisses*.

Haarh translates this clause as 'the power of life is broken', equating *brlaḥ* with *bla*. The idea is taken up by Gñaḥgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan (1995: 23, n. 28) and Rgyaye Bkrabho (after Hill 2006a: 99, n. 48; *rerenas brlarus kyaŋ brduŋsšiŋ bcagnas*, however, does not translate as "broke the "brla" bone and *brduŋs-tree* of each" but as 'from each one [he] knocked *and* broke also the thighbone'; the connective morpheme {-*ciŋ*} (-*šiŋ* after final -*s*) can combine with all three temporal stems, cf. Zeisler 2004: 285, examples 163-166 for the use with stem II). The idea behind the supposed breaking of bones seems to be that a life principle, *bla*, resides in the bone or marrow (and due to the sound similarity, particularly in the *brlarus*). As Gñaḥgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan further explains, one wants to hinder a zombie (*rolaŋs*) from rising up by breaking its legs.

The main problem with this and similar analyses is that the text does not speak of (uncounted) bones, but of a (possibly individual) limb (*brlaḥ*), and that the verb *rduŋ* does not by itself have the meaning 'break' but 'hit, beat (against)'. This may include harmless acts, such as *knock a door* or *beat a drum*, but also quite violent or at least more forceful acts, such as *cudgel* or *drub*, *trash*, and *smash into pieces* (JÄK). An interpretation as *knock open* cannot fully be ruled out, but in this case, there should be a breakable item. The thigh does not qualify.

The phrase *brla brduŋs* rather recalls the tradition concerning the ritual obligation to beat the corpse of Drigum with iron rods, cf. note 20 above.

The preceding discussion presupposes that the act of *brla brduŋs* goes together with the subsequent act of depositing the corpse. There is no necessity to do so. *brla brduŋs* might well be an act connected with the preceding 'hunting' expedition. Its significance might then be a quite different one. One may perhaps recall Arjuna beating his own thigh as a signal for Bhīma, and the latter then hitting (at) the thigh(s) of Duryodhana as an act of utterly foul play, leaving even the combatants in shame, cf. the nice summary of Mahābhārata 9.57 to 9.60 given by Smith (2009: 109-111 with n. 24 on p. 110), here once more shortened:

> Kṛṣṇa replies that … *[i]f Bhīma fights according to dharma he will lose: he should therefore fight unfairly*. Kṛṣṇa reminds Arjuna of Bhīma's vow *to break Duryodhana's thigh*; … Unless Bhīma resorts to *unfair fighting*, Dhṛtarāṣṭra will remain king. Hearing Kṛṣṇa's advice, Arjuna *strikes his own thigh* where Bhīma can see him; Bhīma understands the signal. … Bhīma rushes at Duryodhana … and *smashes his thighs with his club*. Duryodhana falls to the earth with a great crash; …
>
> Balarāma cries out in dismay at Bhīma's *unprecedented violation of the rules in striking below the navel*. …
>
> At this the dying Duryodhana props himself up with his arms and bitterly accuses Kṛṣṇa of responsibility for the *unfair deaths* of himself and many others, … he has secured victory and the death of his enemies *only by resorting to adharma and trickery*. … *[T]houghts of the unfair deaths of their enemies*, causes the Pāṇḍavas shame and grief. …
>
> [To this Kṛṣṇa answers:] "… As for Dhṛtarāṣṭra's son here, not even staffwielding Death could kill him fairly if he stood club in hand and free from weariness. You should not take it to heart that this king has been slain, for, *when enemies become too numerous, they should be slain by deceit and stratagems. This is the path formerly trodden by the gods to kill the demons; and a path trodden by the virtuous may be trodden by all*. We have achieved success. …" His words restore the Pāṇḍavas' spirits, and they *rejoice* to see Duryodhana lying slain (all emphasis added).

The winner takes it all, including the morals and the gods, who are, by definition, on his side. The whole debate is much longer, which indicates how important the topic (the dilemma between morality and war) must have been for the authors as well as for the targeted audience. Given this importance, it is not unlikely that beating the thigh could have become emblematic in both a negative

and an affirmative sense, and that the corresponding narremes, if they were not themselves borrowed into the Mahābhārata, could have spread far beyond India.

The thigh beating of OTC appears in a song of triumph, where an assault is likened to a hunting expedition, and the slain enemies to timid hares. It is rather obvious that the Loŋam were taken by surprise, and that the *hunters* did not behave like gentlemen towards the women. To my taste, this could well qualify as deceit and unfair behaviour, particularly as the Loŋam had not given reason for an attack, not even according to the narrative of OTC I: Drigum had caused his death by his own folly, and Loŋam the culprit, if he ever were a culprit (after all, P.t.1286 knows him as a *rgyalphran*, that is, a ruler in his own right), had already been murdered, quite perfidiously. The real offender would have had reason enough to invert his guilt into arrogant boasting.

<80> *ḥo/b de* or *Wode myed*.

See epigraphic notes and illustrations θ. *ḥo/b or wo*. The graphical representation allows three quite different analyses:

(a) A final *-b* could have been added below the *ḥa*, but offset somewhat to the right. This is represented here with a slash. With or without an offset, this is a common graphical device in OT manuscripts to save on space or to add forgotten letters, cf. also the names *Phya/u̯ ~ Phya/v* and *Mya/u̯ ~ Mya/v* = Miao, where the final semivowel or labial is conventionally added below the *-y-* subscript (typically transcribed as *Phyva* or *Myva*). Another case is found in RAMA, where *gsol* regularly appears as *gso/l*, regularly transliterated as *gslo* in the notes. One could thus read *ḥo/b* 'pit' with Bacot & Toussaint and Haarh.

(b) Gñaḥgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan (1995: 21 and n. 28 on p. 23) and Wang & Bsodnams Skyid (1992: 37) read *ḥvo*, that is radical *ḥa* plus *wazur*. Given the value of the *wazur* as a rounded semivowel (*u* or *o*), this interpretation is rather unlikely.

(c) Following OTDO, Hill (2006a: 99, n. 49) suggests to read this combination as digraph '*vwo*' (i.e. *wo*). While he does not give any reason for his choice, other instances of the digraph show, that his interpretation is well possible from the epigraphic side: the digraph can appear in a form that corresponds to a combination with a forgotten letter.

On the first sight, this last reading does not seem to make sense. Hill has no explanation for the meaning of the word *wo* or *wode*, except that he accepts a relation with the water spirit Ḥo(d)de Bedde Riŋmo, as set up by Gñaḫgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan (see below). Neither Hill nor Gñaḫgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan give an explanation how the form *Wode* could be related to the form *Ḥo(d)de*. If it is not simply an error of the scribe (perhaps in a failed attempt to supplement the second part of the spirit's name), it should be a dialectal variant, and, if not itself representing an older form with a labio-velar or labio-laryngal initial, both forms should go back to an original [*γu̯ode] or [*ɦu̯ode] (cf. Hill 2006b).

Gñaḫgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan's interpretation is in need of a reinterpretation of *myed* as *mad* 'be true' (via *myad*, which is given in BRGY and TETT as old form of *mad*). The water spirit would have been 'true', possibly in the sense of being reliable or loyal, and thus Spude Guŋrgyal himself (or, as a term of self-reference: 'I myself') is reliable or abiding, as well (*klu Ḥode Riŋmo madla Spude Guŋrgyal khoboḫaŋ maddo //*). This appears somewhat stretched, but it would at least account for the obvious parallel construction.

Keeping ~~more~~ closer to the text, one could perhaps interpret the phrase as *Without Ḥode Spude is not* or more literally '[If] Ḥode were not, [I], Spude were not [either]', that is, *Spude Guŋrgyal would not be standing here as the legal successor*. A similar solution could, however, be arrived with *ḫob* 'pit': *without the sacrifice no legitimate Spude Guŋrgyal*. But since both readings presuppose an omitted marker *-na* for the condition clause, they are not the first choice, even though such omission is licensed in a song.

If the form *Wode* were correct and if it were due to dialect variation, one could also think that the parallelism of clauses v212 and v213 *Wode myed Spude myed* reflects a split compound *Wode-Spude, which stands for *Ḥolde-Spu(l)de, a combination of Ḥolde Guŋrgyal, the name of the dynastic mountain deity, and Spu(l)de Guŋrgyal, the name of the new lord (I owe this line of thought to Helga Uebach). In that case, of course, *myed* could not be identical with CT *med*, but only with CT *mad*. The meaning could then perhaps be *Wode and Spude are true[ly existing]* or both *are [the] true [divine and earthly sovereigns]*.

In an alternative attempt, Gñaḫgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan (1995: 23, n. 28) relates the word *ḫvo* or *ḫo/b* implicitly to *yob* 'stirrup, step' (the less frequent reading 'ditch, pit' seems to be ruled out by his choice of spelling), and thus indirectly to the foot or leg, since having no legs prevents the dead to rise again as a zombie (*brla bcag ro sbas / yobste rkaŋpa medla rolaŋ med cespaste* 'The thigh was broken, the corpse hidden. As for *yob*: there is no leg and (thus) no rising of the corpse, such [is the meaning]'). The real significance would be that the Loŋams had been completely annihilated (*Loŋampa rmegmeddu btaŋbaḫi don*).

This interpretation can be ruled out, since *spu* cannot be corpse, or if emended to *spur*, the honorific form would refer to the corpse of Drigum not to that of the Loŋam.

The solution depends on how we should interpret *spu*, see the following note 81.

<81> *spu de myed* or *Spude myed* (=*myad*).

Given the context of the song, that is, the *spur btab* in the preceding clause v211, it is not fully impossible that *spur* 'corpse' was intended here instead of *spu*. But then, it is again Drigums corpse that is no longer, not that of the slain enemies. The verse might perhaps signal that with the closing of the last pit the funeral is over, and as a consequence, the corpse of Drigum has disappeared from the realm of the living. From this perspective, the verse might even signal — against later tradition — that after the appropriate rites, the corpse of Drigum disappeared like that of his predecessors. In that case, the 'royal monument' (*baŋso*) of clause v185 (l. 49) would have been merely a memorial platform or the like, and not a grave (cf. note 84 below). This interpretation would imply that the song is taken from a quite different tradition than the one that makes Drigum the first king to have a tomb.

If *spu* should refer to the clan name, and if the line would thus signify something like the famous *Le roi est mort, vive le roi*, this would imply that Drigum himself was a Spu, which is neither supported by the text nor by tradition. (Even if one takes Rulaskyes to be identical with Drigum, he would have been a Bkrags, while it was his wife who came from the Spu.) Haarh (1969, passim) is most probably right when he suggests that the transition from Drigum to Spude Guŋrgyal corresponds to a dynastic break or more precisely to the true beginning of the Spurgyal lineage (unlike Haarh, however, I do not think that the lineage is continued by the following 'dynasties').

A possible alternative, already hinted at in note 35 above, is that the clan name Spu as a self-designation signified nothing else than *humanity* (as defined by the ability to speak — one's own language). If so, the word *spu* could certainly also be used simply with the meaning 'man'. The whole phrase *ḥob de myed* / *spu de myed* / 'that pit is no more, that man is no more' could then simply signal that the funeral is ruled off. For Tibetans as well as for the Tuyuhun, the people of Greater Yangtong, and the Hephthalites, mourning ended, in fact, with the accomplished burial (Pelliot 1961: 3; Molè 1970: 18; Pelliot 1963: 708; Enoki 1958: 50). Nevertheless, the wording under this interpretation sounds rude.

The word *spu* can also be associated with a large semantic field related to the meaning 'high, exalted, supreme' associated with words in the shape of *spV* and

sbV, underlying, e.g., *spu* 'hair, feather', *spa* 'reed', *spo* and *spyi* 'summit', *speḥu, spiḥu* 'turret' (< **spa* 'tower') as items that are protruding, cf. also *spa* 'hero, proud' for an exalted person (cf. Zeisler forthcoming, chapter 4 § 2.4.3). If we read the preceding clause v213 as a condition clause, the self-reference as *spu* could have constituted a word play: on the one hand, the speaker is a member of the Spu clan, but on the other, he now claims the highest rank available among the clan leaders. For this possibility cf. also note 80 above. In a way, to close the vicious circle opened there, the interpretation of the word *spu* depends on how we read and how we interpret the grapheme *ḥo/b* or *wo*. If we read *Wode* as a name, we might do so with *Spude*, and both names may then be related to the dynastic lineage. *myed* must then be read as *myad* 'be true', that is, *Wode and Spude are true[ly existing]*, i.e. they are the legitimate celestial and earthly rulers.

<center><82> *gzugsna*.</center>

Bacot & Toussaint, followed by Hill, mistake this as stem II of the verb *ḥdzugs* 'put in, plant, establish'. Stem II, however regularly takes the form *btsugs*, only stem III, the gerundive, has the form *gzug* or *gzugs*. The gerundive can be used, e.g., in a purposive clause, where, since it involves a temporal movement towards an intended goal, it is typically followed by the locative-purposive marker {-*tu*}, less frequently by the dative-locative marker -*la*, or by zero, but not by the locative marker -*na*, which expresses a concrete and non-dynamic spatial relation. The gerundive may also appear, although rather infrequently, in the first part of a condition clause, indicating some sort of obligation. I do not fully understand the motivation for its use here, and in the original annotation I had, therefore, come to quite a different conclusion, treating the whole sequence as a noun phrase (hence the index number is missing).

The caseless form of the adverb *ḥog* 'below' could indicate that the whole passage is taken from a song. In this case, the locative -*na* may perhaps have the same introductory function as in the later epic tradition, where one will come across the standard phrase *X mašesna Y* 'if you do not know X, it is/ has the function of Y' (cf. R.A. Stein 1959: 165). Disregarding the clause chaining at the end of the passage, the translation could be something like 'If [you] were to set up a hearth below, [I] [already] brought the copper/ iron ore down from above.' I do not think that the continuation 'and came as the lord' would have belonged to the original song.

The conditional or hypothetical character is only reflected by Bacot & Toussaint: 'Si j'ai établi mon foyer en bas, c'est que les vasques de cuivre furent précipitées d'en haut'. This translation expresses an inference: *If I could establish my hearth below, then (only) because the copper basins were thrown down from*

above, which apart from the inversion of condition and result, that we also find in the Tibetan text, is somewhat hard to digest. Haarh is apparently unable to make any sense out of the construction, whereas Hill takes the construction as a temporal *when*-clause.

<center><83> *zaŋs*.</center>

For the meaning 'iron' in the Žaŋžuŋ language, cf. ZhEH (and note 20 above). Haarh and Hill translate 'copper stones fell from above', notwithstanding the transitive-causative verb form. Bacot & Toussaint delegate the agency to some anonymous natural force, overlooking that the verb is followed by the *lhagbcas* morpheme {ste} which disfavours a subject switch. Unlike flowers that may fall or be sent down from the sky by an anonymous agency, the sending down of copper ore does not appear to be a common image in Tibetan literature. I do not know whether the falling of meteors was ever taken as an auspicious sign, but meteors are typically not denoted by the words *zaŋsrdo* or *lcagsrdo*, the common designation being *skarrdo* (BRGY), possibly also *gnamlcags*, see below.

The surface meaning seems to be that Spurgyal brought some metal down, in order to have a hearth or perhaps rather a tripod constructed (by whom so ever). *sgyidbu* and *sgyedpo* typically refer to the three hearth *stones*, while *lcagssgyid* would be the appropriate word for a tripod, which, as the name indicates, is made of iron, not of copper. Whether copper or iron, this would not be worth mentioning, if it were not intended as a simile. As the clause is continued with the statement that the agent is or becomes the lord, the ore from the heights could refer to the haughty rulers whom the new lord had subdued, and the hearth could stand for his new dominion.

If originally part of a song, it might have been an invitation to join the new ruler and to set up the hearth stones, assuring that enough metal for protective weapons has been gathered. The metal in question would be iron again (I do not think that such invitation could be based on a sufficient amount of copper for making household utensils). In this connection, one could think also of a more mythical act, as ascribed to Mukhri, the scion, of whom it is said that 'he threw down thunderbolts (or meteoric iron) and the class of demons was complying': *gnamlcags phabste bdudrigs ḥjompa* | (Šarrdza Bkrašis Rgyalmtshan *Legsbšad rinpocheḥi gtermdzod*, p. 225, as cited by Linnenborn 2004: 193, with n. 243; her translation suggests that Mukhri 'subdued the group of *bdud*, by sounding thunder'; cf., however, Rangjung Yeshe in TETT, most probably based on ThDG, for the inagentive verb I/(III): *ḥjom*, II: *žom*, (IV: *žoms*) 'go or sink down; subside or come under control', which, given its inagentive meaning, should neither have a stem III nor a stem IV).

Alternatively or additionally, the simile might indicate that the new lord brought the wealth of Žaŋžuŋ from above, that is, from the west, down, that is, eastwards, to Central Tibet. This, the use of the mountain name Titse (see note 18), and the fact that *zaŋs* is used, here and possibly also above in clause v68 (l. 20, see note 20), in its Žaŋžuŋ-ian meaning 'iron', all this might perhaps indicate that we are dealing with mythologemes originally belonging to, or transmitted by, Žaŋžuŋ.

<84> *Graŋmo Gnam Bseḥbrtsig*.

The translations 'Graŋmo Gnambseḥ was built' (Haarh; transliteration adjusted) and 'a cold bronze dome erected' (Hill) overlook that the element *-brtsig* of the name does not correspond to stem II *brtsigs* (as used for past time reference or a resulting state), but to stem III, the future oriented gerundive 'to be built' of the verb *rtsig*. The same objection holds against Dotson's (2009: 144, n. 415) suggestion to translate the parallel passage in P.t.1286 as 'they built the tomb Graŋmo Gnamgser' (transliteration adjusted). Hazod's (2005: 223f, n. 10) state-ment that "in DTH Graŋmo Gnambse[ḥ] is the name of the tomb of Spulde Guŋrgyal" (transliteration adjusted) must be likewise be based on the implicit reading *brtsigs*.

In the present passage, however, given the parallelism with the preceding sen-tence v224, a purposive reading 'to be built' seems not to be well-motivated. Ba-cot & Toussaint (1940: 128, n. 4) erroneously take this phrase as the name of ~~the~~ Spulde Guŋrgyal's successor, since the same name is found in Ms. 249 (P.t.1286) with a slightly different spelling as *Graŋmo Gnam Gserbrtsig*. The immediate successor is usually given as Ašolegs (with variants; cf. Haarh 1969: 47). In P.t.1286, TDD/–OTDO, ll. 48-50 we find:

> *Drigum btsanpoḥi sras || Spude Guŋrgyal gnamla Dri [.] bdun | sale [.] Legs drug bšosna | Spude Guŋrgyal groŋsna || Graŋmo Gnam Gserbrtsig | Gserbrtsiggi sras || Tholeg btsanpo...*

Graŋmo Gnam Gserbrtsig is thus certainly the name of Spude Guŋrgyal after his death and not the name of his son, which is given here as Tholeg *btsanpo* ([A]šolegs coming second), cf. TDD/–OTDO, ll. 50-51: 1. Tholeg *btsanpo*, 2. Šolegs *btsanpo*, 3. Gorulegs *btsanpo*, 4. Ḥbroŋžilegs *btsanpo*, 5. Thišoleg *btsanpoḥ*, 6. Išoleg *btsanpo*, altogether six members of the Legs dynastical group. Haarh must have overlooked this passage, although it appears in a text that he had quite obviously studied well (it is no. 1 of his sources, Haarh 1969: 33).

Quite against his insights proposed in the accompanying note 415, Dotson (2009: 144, transliteration adjusted) translates these lines as

'Spude Guŋrgyal Gnamla Dribdun was the son of Drigum *btsanpo*. When he united with Sale Legsdrug, Spude Guŋrgyal died, whereupon they [had the son] Graŋmo Gnam Gserbrtsig.'

Dotson mistakes *Gnamla Dribdun* as part of Spude Guŋrgyal's name and accordingly *Sale Legsdrug* as the name of the latter's wife. While he blames the author(s) of these lines as the culprit(s), it is his interpretation that, although possibly suggested by the use of the *šad*.s, violates Tibetan grammar as much as it does not suit the context:

> If Spude Guŋrgyal were already the 'subject' or co-'subject' of *bšos*, his mentioning again as 'subject' of *groŋs* would be quite unexpected.

Furthermore, if, in this context, the verb *bšo*, *bšos* means 'unite, mate, lie with, etc.', we could expect some overt case marking indicating the relation *with*, most probably the comitative marker *daŋ*. If a symmetric relation is intended and husband and wife are thus to be interpreted as collective actors of the intransitive verb 'unite (with each other)', the comitative should follow the first member, here, the husband's name, and since there is only one argument, the couple, this single argument would remain in the absolutive (our pattern 01).

If an asymmetric relation is intended, and thus only one of the couple is seen as the main actor, we could expect two different frames. If the verb described only female behaviour, the wife as the 'subject' should come first, followed by the husband in the comitative case (our pattern 05), cf. the example given in JÄK, notably for a *female* subject. Similarly also in the narrative of the supernatural conception of Ŋarlaskyes, where it is said that (in her dream) Drigum's widow 'had intercourse *with* someone looking like a son of the *Klu*': *Kluḥi bu ḥdrabadaŋ bšospa* (Mkhaspa Ldeḥu, ed. 1987: 246). If the verb focused only on the male's acting upon a female, one could perhaps, as with the corresponding Ladakhi verbs, expect ergative marking for the male and dative-locative marking for the female (our pattern 07, or with drop of the ergative marker: 03a). The beginning of the annals, P.t.1288, TDD/OTDO, ll. 15-16, however, shows that the verb *bšo* can be used neutrally with pattern 05 for both genders:

> *$ || denas lo drugnaḥ | btsanpo Khri Sroŋrtsan dguŋdu gšegso | btsanmo Muncaŋ Koŋcodaŋ dguŋlo gsum bšosso*
> 'Then, after (lit. in) six years, the imperial scion Khri Sroŋrtsan betook himself to heaven. [He] had performed marital duties *with* the imperial daughter

Muncaŋ Koŋco for three years' (cf. Dotson 2009: 22: 'had cohabited *to*' and p. 82, quite freely: 'had been married *to*').

The verb *bšo* has also the meaning 'engender, beget' (ergative for the parent(s) and absolutive for the child, pattern 08, with drop of the ergative marker also pattern 02 or double absolutive, as underlying Bacot & Toussaint's translation: 'Les sept Gnam-la-dri engendrèrent les six Sa-le-legs'). Its stem II can lead to an impersonal reading or even to a secondary intransitive verb 'be engendered, begotten', as listed in JÄK and, in fact, as used in P.t.1286 with the meaning 'be born' in place of the original intransitive verb *ḥcho*, *ḥchos*. As an intransitive verb, it follows our pattern 03b, which we also find for the verb *skye* 'be born', here in P.t.1286 with locative-purposive marking on the LOCATION argument, the collective of husband *and* wife: *(X-daŋ Y)-{tu} šospaḥi sras* 'the son born *to* (X and Y)' and at least grammatically not 'the son of X conceived *with* Y' as Dotson (2009: 145f.) translates.

In the cited passage of P.t.1286, there is a conspicuous parallelism and contrast between the designations *gnamla* X-7 and *sale* Y-6, and an equally eye-catching parallelism and contrast between the phrases *bšosna* / X and *groŋsna* // Y, which are not accounted for in Dotson's translation. For the latter contrast, cf. also R.A. Stein (1973: 423, ns. 41-44) where *bšos* 'être vivant' etc. is in various ways opposed to *noŋs* and *groŋ(s)* 'mort' etc.. In this context, R.A. Stein (n. 41) also refers to our passage in OTC I.

The expression *sale Legs drug* quite obviously refers to the 'dynasty' of the six Legs on earth (for *le* instead of *la*, see also the variation between Ŋarleskyes and Ŋarlaskyes, note 39 above). *legs* might be the collective form of *leg* or *lig*, CT *srid(pa)* (ZhEH, ZhNN). The latter form appears in the names of Žaŋžuŋ rulers, where it may correspond to Skr. *sat* or *sattva*, perhaps in the sense of a 'legitimate descent' (the Tibetan word *legs* 'good' translates only one of the many aspects of these words; for the connotations of Tibetan *srid* with the notion of 'procreation' or with its legal precondition, the marriage, and its further political implications see R.A. Stein 1973). Less obviously, then, *gnamla Dri bdun* should refer to the 'dynasty' of the seven Khri in the sky (cf. Bacot et al. 1940: 87, n. 5 and also Dotson 2009: 144, n. 415). Whether the form *dri* reflects an extremely early sound change affecting first the clusters with velar and alveolar trill, whether it is simply a mistake triggered by the preceding name of Drigum (note that in combination with the 'middle of the seven of the Khri' only the form Khri appears, ll. 31 (2x), 42, 43), whether it derives from a different tradition, or whether it results from a combination of all these factors cannot be said with certainty.

Note, however, that the element *tri* appears in the Žaŋžuŋ name for a celestial body *Triki* (ZhNN), possibly derived via metathesis from Skr. *Kṛttikā*, the Tibetan *Smindrug*, the Pleiades, which, in European and Chinese tradition have seven elements, but in ancient India only six (Petri 1966; cf. http://en.wikipedia. org/wiki/Kṛttika). Similarly in Kashmiri as spoken in the Neelam Valley in Pakistan, the constellation, called Kretsa, consists of six stars (Khawaja Rehman, p.c.). But the number seems to be quite variable, Urdu speakers call the constellation *sāt sahelioṇ kā jhumkā* 'the earring of the *seven* girl friends' (Ruth Laila Schmidt, p.c.), and in Tibetan one finds the alternative name *madrugbu* (SCD, BRGY), which indicates that there are six mothers and one son, together seven elements. The difference in numbers may result from fluctuations in brightness of one of the stars (http://de.wikipedia.org/wiki/Plejaden). The Pleiades are an important constellation in Indian and Tibetan astrology. They appear as one of the first entries in the lists of the 28 (or 27) lunar mansions (*rgyuskar*; Skr. *nakṣatra*; Petri 1966, cf. also BRGY sub *rgyuskar*). In the Ladakhi marriage songs they constitute one of the 18 'auspicious connections' /rhtemrbel cobgyat/ (*rtenḥbrel bcobrgyad*).

While Old and Classical Tibetan do not allow for the clusters *tr* and *thr* (the few such words are all obvious loans), the representation of the two clusters *tr* and *dr* in the Old Tibetan manuscripts is quite similar, the main difference being the way how the subscript is joined (actually, in OTC the only word with the cluster *tr* is the place name Maltro, ll. 192, 422, in later times also spelled *Malgro* < **Maldro*). A confusion of the two clusters *tr* and *dr* or a copy error would thus not be completely improbable.

The clusters of velar plus alveolar trill (*kr*, *khr*, *gr*) seem to have started changing into the corresponding retroflexes [*ṭṣ*, *ṭṣh*, *ḍẓ*] quite early, although most probably not in all dialects. It must have been the knowledge of this synchronic sound alternation that has led early scribes as well as later scholars to opt for a velar cluster instead of a dental cluster or a retroflex in loan words. This almost institutionalised case of hypercorrection is quite obvious in the spelling *Grugu* for the *Drugu* (Turks) or *Grigum* (var. *Khrigum*) for *Drigum*, less obvious perhaps in the spelling of *ḥgrul* 'go, walk', not attested with a velar cluster in Balti, and thus most probably borrowed from an Indian language, cf. Hindi *ḍulnā* 'move' and Kumaoni *ḍulṇo* 'wander' (Bielmeier 1985: 171). Even my non-scholarly Ladakhi friends would automatically opt for a velar cluster for retroflexes in words of unknown origin and for retroflex variants of words with dentals (e.g. Shamskat /trhup/ for /thup/ 'be able' would be spelled as *khrub*). An original *tri-*, alternatively spelled as *dri-*, could thus well be re-interpreted as either *gri-* or *khri-*. For obvious reasons, *gri* 'knife' is not the preferred option when it comes to celestial bodies. (The name *Drigum* might accordingly be read as 'one of the *Pleiades* that

vanished', that is, did not return to the sky, referring perhaps to the star with the weakest brightness, which was once seen and then no longer.)

It should further be noted that according to the genealogy of P.t.1286, *Khribdun* is not only the name for the first 'dynasty' on earth, but hidden also in the designation of the first king's father (and six uncles): *Khriḥi Bduntshigs*, lit. 'the Middle of the Seven of the Khri', i.e. the fourth Khri. Arguably then, the designation *Khribdun* would have originally belonged to this mythical ancestral heavenly realm, where it would have referred to only one single generation (with seven, but perhaps only six members, as in the preceding generation or as corresponding to the number of the stars). Only later was the designation transferred to the allegedly first dynasty, referring then to seven (or eight, sometimes even nine) consecutive generations. This is another instance of transforming a horizontal or synchronous setting into a vertical or diachronous sequence.

The addition of a 'middle one' to a group of six brothers may be related to the addition of a 'son' to a group of six 'mothers'. But the apparent oscillation between the numbers six and seven may also have to do with an odd feature of Žaŋžuŋ numbers, namely the combination with a lower or higher number in ordinals and conjunctive numerals, interestingly with a break at the seventh element (cf. Haarh 1968: 18: *drug* 'six', *snis* and variants 'seven', *gyad* 'eight', but *drug-snis* 'sixth', *sni-tse* 'seventh', *sni-gyad* 'eighth'). Another possible source for confusion could be the *byaŋgyi skarma spunbdun* 'the Seven Brothers, stars of the north', the seven stars of the Great Bear, also known as *sminbdun* or *smebdun* (SCD). In any case, I should suggest to translate the passage as follows (cf. also Panglung 1988: 353 for a similar rendering of the second half):

> 'The son of Drigum, the scion: Spude Guŋrgyal; at [the junction of two lineages:] the seven Dri in the sky [and] the six Legs on the earth; when engendered: Spude Guŋrgyal, when having died: Graŋmo Gnam Gserbrtsig. The son of Gserbrtsig: Tholeg, the scion …'

Admittedly, my interpretation might be in need of a radically different punctuation and the addition of a marker for the relation *between* as indicated below (all changes are marked by grey shading):

> *Drigum btsanpoḥi sras* | *Spude Guŋrgyal* || *gnamla Dri bdun sale Legs drug[na]* || *bšosna* | *Spude Guŋrgyal* || *groŋsna* | *Graŋmo Gnam Gserbrtsig* || *Gserbrtsiggi sras* | *Tholeg btsanpo*...

For the interesting technique of enumerating three terms, by giving the middle term separately from the first and the last term, which are then grouped together

and, as a group, receive a locative marker, expressing the relation *between*, or perhaps more precisely the notion of *at [the junction of]*, compare l. 42 of the same text:

> *Yablha Bdagdrug bžugspaḥi sras | gcen gsum gcuŋ gsum<u>na</u> | Khriḥi Bduntshigsdaŋ* ~~bdi~~ *n |*
>
> 'The son of the [heaven]-dweller, *Yablha Bdagdrug*, between (lit. at) three elder brothers [and] three younger brothers, seven with *Khriḥi Bduntshigs*.'

I would assume that in view of this parallelism (and the internal coherence) and as compared to the grammatical problems discussed above, the mispunctuation could be more easily explained by some kind of enjambment or other features of recitation, some 'error' in the transmission (in part resulting from a repeated faithful copying of a line-ending *šad*, although no longer motivated in a different layout), not yet fully developed punctuation conventions, or, in this case, a partial neglect by the scribe (e.g. the double *šad*.s as appearing between father and son in the original text, do not seem to be well motivated either, further up in the manuscript *šad*.s are repeatedly missing between the name of a person, just defined as son and the same name as fathering the next generation). The missing locative marker might be explained either by haplography (triggered by the following *bšosna*) or by a contraction in an originally metrical text. The author(s) or compiler(s) of OTC quite apparently came to a similar result: *bšosna ni | Spude Guŋrgyal | groŋsna ni | Graŋmo Gnam Gserbrtsig |*. With the emphasising, and here also contrasting, use of the topic marker *ni*, this passage can only be translated the way I did, or a bit more freely as 'At birth: Spude Guŋrgyal; at death: Graŋmo Gnam Gserbrtsig'.

In later tradition, however, the first part of the name, *Graŋmo*, is part of a place name. *Graŋmo Graŋchuŋ* (as found, e.g. in Ñaŋral Ñima Ḥodzer's *Metog sñiŋpo* and Mkhaspa Ldeḥu; var. *Draŋmo Draŋ* in *Bkaḥchems kakholma* and *Braŋmo Braŋchuŋ* in *Bkaḥthems kakholma*, cf. Linnenborn 2004: 178) denotes a mountain, where Drigum's (second?) grave is to be found. According to the *Rgya-Bod yigchaŋ mkhaspa dgaḥbyed* of Śrībhūtibhadra, the grave was first built at the end of the valley Senmo in Rkoŋyul, but the corpse was transferred to Yarluŋs and was hidden (*sbas*) in a cave or on the top (*zomla*) of Mt. Graŋmo Graŋchuŋ in Ḥchoŋrgyas (= Ḥphyoŋrgyas). The grave or the corpse received the name Gnamla Gserthig (Panglung 1988: 324/235). According to Hazod (2005: 223f. n. 10), the corpse would have been transferred after the death rites, while the site on Gyaŋto Blaḥbubs would have been merely a memorial or "(grave)-throne". The name of Drigum's (real) grave would then have been *Graŋmo Gnam Gsert[h]ig*. Mt. Graŋmo Graŋchuŋ would be found in the area of Dar(pa)thaŋ/ Ŋa(r)rathaŋ (ibid. p.

223 with n. 10), possibly in the valley of Ḥphyoŋpo, perhaps near present-day Grongchung (ibid. p. 224).

One possibility to reconcile these conflicting traditions could be to see in Spude Guŋrgyal's posthumous name a reference to his own grave: 'The one for whom [the tomb] Graŋmo Gnambseḥ (or Gnamgser) is/ was to be built'. This could indicate that Grigum as much as the 'predecessors' never existed (quite likely the main reason for the non-existence of their tombs), alternatively that Spulde Guŋrgyal (or his successors) appropriated Drigum's grave as a further step in cementing his (or their) legitimacy. A further possibility is that Drigum was a ruler of Rkoŋpo who died in an attempt to conquer neighbouring Myaŋro and was burried accordingly in his homeland Rkoŋpo. At some later time, Spude Guŋrgyal or his descendants, who may or may not have been from Drigum's clan, established themselves in Yarluŋs, but in order to gain legitimacy they built up a new tomb for Drigum their alleged ancestor and the even more ostensible 'former ruler of Yarluŋs'.

EPIGRAPHIC NOTES AND ILLUSTRATIONS

1. lbo (addendum to note 12)
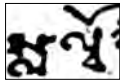
slalbo, l. 221

lbošog, l. 416
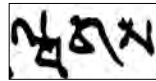
lbags, P.t.1072, l. 180

2. rva ~ rṷa (addendum to note 15)

It is interesting to note that in many Old Tibetan manuscripts, the *wazur*, that is, the voiced labial as a subscript is not yet clearly distinguishable from the ordinary letter. In particular, there is no difference in size. In the Old Tibetan manuscripts, the voiced labial itself may come in a square or triangular form. For the following discussion, I should like to distinguish these as *ba* vs. *va*. The square *ba* is found in inscriptions and 'monumental' or official writing. The triangular *va* is typical for (more) informal handwriting, as, e.g., in OTC. Ideally, its left point is situated in the middle between the headline and the base. This makes it a descendant of the Brāhmī or rather Gupta *va* (cf. Laufer 1898: 189f. for the subscribed *va* or *wazur*). In neglect handwriting, however, the left point might end up even be below the base of the right stroke (as evident in the second case of *lbo* last note).

Van Schaik (this volume), starting from the earlier attested inscriptions, argues that the square *ba* is the original form and "the collapsing of the two vertical lines into a triangle almost certainly developed from the exigencies of writing quickly with a pen on paper — as opposed to inscribing in stone". It should be noted, however, that the *wazur* is never attested in a square form. If thus the square letter *ba* and the triangular letter *va* were in use simultaneously at the time of the introduction or standardisation of the script, the two forms should have had different phonetic values. In particular, while the square *ba* might have been ambiguous, representing either a stop [b] or a fricative [ß] or [v], the triangular *va* should have had only the value of a fricative [ß] or [v] or a semivowel [ṷ]. There would have been absolutely no need to compose the digraph *ḥba* or *ḥva*, in order to represent the value [ß] or [v]. The fact that the digraph *ḥba* or *ḥva* was invented indicates that there was only one letter form available initially. The fact that the *wazur* is not attested in a square form, further indicates that the initial form for the representation of a voiced labial stop or fricative was the triangular letter *va*. Whatever the reasons for the choice of a square form in inscriptions and official writing, the subscribed letter, due to its low frequency, was 'forgotten' by this reform.

In this connection, I should like to draw the attention to a certain tendency in various manuscripts, e.g. OTC (P.t.1287), P.t.1134, and P.t.1285, to write the labial as a *letter-in-line* very loosely, often with rounded points and the left and right line not exactly meeting, whereas the labial as a *letter-below-the-line* is often more accurately rendered as a perfect triangle, often also with extremely sharp points. Like in the case of the modern *wazur*, the left point is then typically found at half height. The letters-below-the-line include the radical with superscript, the subscribed labial semi-vowel -*u̯*- as the predecessor of the *wazur* (cf. Laufer 1898: 307, 1899: 95-96 for its value as a rounded semi-vowel *u̯* (or *o̯*)), and any forgotten letter added below the main line, cf., e.g. P.t.1134, l. 100, where a missing pre-radical had been added below the *šad*. Writing a letter below the line, particularly ex post, involves an interruption in the flow of writing. This gives me the impression that the ideal form for informal handwriting was a sharply pointed triangular *va* based on the triangular *va* of certain Brāhmī types (Śuṃga, Kuṣāṇa, and Gupta), but turned counter-clockwise by 90°. Quick writing leads to a more trapezoid and often also more rounded form. This can also be seen with other letters, e.g. the -*g*- in the same word:

b\sñags, P.t.1134, l. 100   Gupta (Allahabad) *ba* and *va**   Kuṭila *ba* and *va**

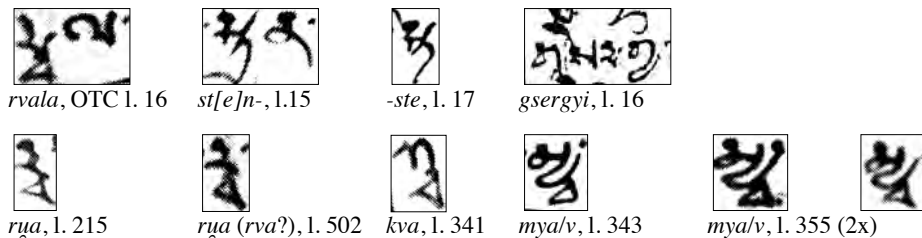*http://zh.wikipedia.org/zh-tw/Template:Archaic_Brahmic_scripts

The Brāhmī *va* was originally a circle below a vertical stroke. The circle then developed into an isosceles triangle, with the base at the bottom, the vertical stroke being shortened and dropped only in few variants (cf. the Aśoka and Allahabad Gupta forms given in Faulmann 1880: 126; for the various Brāhmī variants, including a Gupta variant with a long stroke, see http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/3/36/Brahmi.png). Uray (1955: 102) speaks of the Kuṭila type with respect to the triangular *va*; but the Kuṭila *va*, like the Śāradā and the Nāgarī *va* has a round loop-like form (it resembles the Tibetan *na*). A remnant of the earlier Brāhmī *va* might be seen in the drop-like *ba*/*va* variant of some 8th or 9th century Central Asian documents of the Stein collection, represented in Francke 1912, plate IV, first two columns.

It would appear to me somewhat more logical if informal handwriting had a longer tradition in Tibet (most probably among merchants, but perhaps also among ritualists) than official writing. To my opinion, the various means of derivation for the 'missing' letters and the violations of a strictly phonetic ordering (Francke 1912: 269f., Róna-Tas 1985: 232, 255-260; for an English summary of the latter, see Zeisler 2007b: 29-32) show that the adaptation of an Indian script to

Tibetan phonetics was rather slow, and certainly not the work of a single person or a small committee (cf. also Zeisler 2005: 43 with n. 6). Nothing, however, speaks against a single person or a committee to decide upon a more monumental form of writing for inscriptions and other official purposes on the base of a different type of Indian alphabet.

In OTC, at least, one can note a subtle difference between a radical-below-the-line and a subscript semi-vowel. While there is usually no apparent difference in size, the subscript ideally lacks the vertical headline. I shall represent this variant with the symbol for a non-syllabic vowel: *-u̯-*. Unfortunately, the scribe(s) was (or were) not fully consistent, and thus we can find the syllable *lu̯o* for *lbo* (ll. 221 and 416) not only with a headless *-u̯-*, but with a quite miniature one, as well (see note 12 and epigraphic notes and illustrations θ. *lbo*). By contrast the subscribed semi-vowel may, from time to time appear in the full form with the headline, as in the case of *rva* in line 16, where, as a consequence, it was mistranscribed as radical letter (cf. note 15).
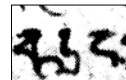
The other two occurrences of *ru̯a* 'horn' in OTC, ll. 215 and 502, are represented more or less correctly as *rava* and *rva* in Bacot & al. (1940: 107 l. 11, 121 l. 8) and as རྭ in Wang & Bsodnams Skyid (1992: 46, 64) and as *rwa* (*rva*) in TDD/OTDO. The upper bar, however, is also found in one of two instances of *Ku̯acu* ll. 340, 341 (the latter with the bar) and in at least one of six instances of *Mya/u̯* ll. 335 (2x), 343, 345, 347, 393 (l. 343, clearly with an additional stroke at the head; in the two instances of l. 335, one could perhaps argue that a bar merged with the *yabtags*).

rvala, OTC l. 16   *st[e]n-*, l.15   *-ste*, l. 17   *gsergyi*, l. 16

ru̯a, l. 215   *ru̯a* (*rva*?), l. 502   *kva*, l. 341   *mya/v*, l. 343   *mya/v*, l. 355 (2x)

The fact that the subscribed semivowel may be represented as a slightly reduced, that is, bar-less *va*, has not yet been brought to the attention of the public, as far as I know. Nor has anyone commented upon the fact that in OTC a derived (bar-less) *-u̯-* could still interchange with a full *va* (with top bar). Uray (1955: 108), who obviously had no access to the OTC manuscript, points to an instance of a non-reduced semi-subscript *-v-* in another Old Tibetan text, but does not mention the occurrence or absence of the top bar as a distinctive feature.

3. dud (addendum to note 32)

dud, l. 27 *yod*, l. 28 *mchid*, l. 30 *bsaddo*, l. 31 *khyod*, l. 31

daŋ, l. 25 *gaŋ*, l. 28 *chuŋ*, l. 29 *ŋala*, l. 30 *naŋdu*, l. 32

4. rlom (addendum to note 54)
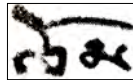
rlom, OTC l. 47 edited version *brl[i]ŋ*, l. 1 *cha*, l. 352 *bc[iŋs]*, l. 46

5. lham (addendum to note 78)
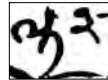
lham, l. 57 *lham*, l. 39 *ltar*, l. 10 *ltor*, l. 20 *ltor*, l. 48

6. ḥo/b or wo (addendum to note 80)

Apart from the word in question, the digraph appears in OTC five times for the name *Woŋker ~ Weŋker Žaŋše* (ll. 495, 496, 497 with *o*, ll. 512, 521 with *e*).

ḥo/b- or *wode*, ~~OTC~~ l. 58 *wo[ŋ]*, l. 495 *wo[ŋ]*, l. 496 *wo[ŋ]*, l. 497 *we[ŋ]*, l. 512 *we[ŋ]*, l. 521

As the examples indicate, there are different ways of writing the digraph.

(a) The *ḥ-* superscript (?), bearing a diacritic hook, appears in a reduced form (the final stroke is shortened) and combines with a more or less full-fledged *va* or *ba*, the top bar of which merges with the shortened and horizontal final stroke of the *ḥ-*.

(b) A full-fledged radical *ḥa* (?) ~~without diacritic hook~~, the final stroke of which typically points downwards (slant or slightly convex), combines with a more or

less reduced (bar-less) *va* (-*u̯*-). Particularly in the latter case, the digraph cannot be discriminated from a combination with a subjoined final labial.

(c) There is, however, also an intermediary form of neglect handwriting, where it becomes difficult to identify the stroke between the two letters as either the final stroke of the *ḥa* or the top bar of the *va* (or *ba*). It may perhaps be counted as a subtype of type b.

The two styles (a) and (b) seem to reflect the ambiguous phonetic value of the digraph. In the case of *wa* 'fox' < [γ\u02b7a] or [ɦ\u02b7a] and similar words, the first element should have been a radical and the second element a mere subscript, indicating the semivowel. When used to transcribe a foreign [va] or [ßa], the first element should have been a reduced superscript and the second element should have been the radical with the value of [ba] or [va]/[ßa]. In the latter case, the superscript *ḥ-* would not have had any phonetic value of its own, but would have served to disambiguate the phonetic value of the radical.

Besides OTC, digraph *wa* is found in the Old Tibetan Annals, IOL Tib J 0750, ll. 122, 268, 277: *waŋ* (in the latter two instances alternatively transcribed as *ḥbaŋ*); IOL Tib J 1368, l. 26: *waŋ*; IOL Tib J 1374, l. 1: *waŋ*; IOL Tib J 1383, l. 1: *waŋ*; P.t.1047, l. 16: *wer* (alternatively transcribed as *ḥber*), ll. 26, 65, 66, 79, 96, 107, 124, 126, 175, 231, 233, 247, 279, 338, 341, 395, 396: *wiŋ* (alternatively transcribed as *ḥbiŋ*), l. 225: *wa*; P.t.1072 ll. 91, 95: *wa*; P.t.1078bis, l. 1: *weŋ*, ll. 1 (2x), 6, 20, 26, 30, 33 (2x), 37: *waŋ*; P.t.1089 r66: *waŋ*; P.t.1134, ll. 93, 94, 98: *wa*; P.t.1092, r2, v1: *wen*; P.t.1285, l. 126: *war*; P.t.1297-1, l. 10: *waŋ*, ll. 2, 4: *weŋ*, P.t.1297-4, l. 7: *waŋ* (according to OTDO, l. ad3 should also have a *wa*, which I am, however, unable to identify); P.t.1297-6, ll. 1.1, 1.2, 2.1 (2x), 2.3: *weŋ*. A few more instances of digraph *wa* can be found in the documents from Eastern Turkestan (Takeuchi 1997/1998), nos. 134v3 (*Widasa* of Li), 164.7 (*Winesa* of Li), 223.1 (*Wang Mdogzigs*), 542.v9, v11, v1(inv) (*Ldaka Wa.lva*), 588r8 (*ragwa gsas*), 673.2 (*pradawa*).

Documentwise, type (a) (mostly ~~superscript h~~ without hook) is most common (12 : 2 : 3). However, due to the high number of occurrences of the digraph in P.t.1047 (21x type (b), only one time without hook), type (b) appears slightly more frequently than type (a) (22 : 24 : 7). In contrast to OTC, all documents use either style (a) or style (b/c). The labial might be a quadrangular *ba* (as in Takeuchi no. 164.7, 673.2, and IJT 0750) or, more commonly, a triangular *va*. Takeuchi no. 164.7 corresponds to IJT 0750, where the upper bow of the superscript combines directly with a quadrangular *ba*. Takeuchi no. 673.2 is a very interesting piece of monumental writing: the upper bow of the superscript *ḥ-* embraces the letter *ba* on the left side and the top of this bow is almost flat but bears a diacritic hook. The right downward stroke or any connecting line to the letter *ba* is missing. In all

these cases, there is no question that we deal with a digraph. In the following, I present a few exemplary types from the Takeuchi documents:

134v3   542v9, v11, v1.inv   588r8   673.2

It may be noted that Hill's analysis of the letter *wa* as digraph *ḥ* & *wa* is misleading in so far as the digraph in question, *ḥba* (or *ḥva*) in OT, *lba* in CT, consists of a superscripted letter *ḥ-* or *l-* for the fricative value and a radical letter for the labial — if there had been already a letter '*wa*', there would never have been the need to invent the digraph. An apostrophe is not a good representation for a consonant. It is somewhat unfortunate that Chinese scholars chose the symbol "v-" for the letter *ḥ-*. If one follows this convention, the epigraphic transliteration of the digraph *wa* can only be *vba*. If one chooses the symbol *ḥ*, one has both options: *ḥba* and *ḥva*, and it might be expedient to make use of these options in order to distinguish between the quadrangular and the triangular form of the radical.

ABBREVIATIONS

Languages

CT   Classical Tibetan
OT   Old Tibetan
Skr.   Sanskrit

Linguistics

C   Consonant
N   Nasal
NP   Noun Phrase (the nominal group, on which case marking operates)
V   Vowel

Texts, dictionaries, or authors

BRGY   *BodRgya tshigmdzod chenmo*, Zhang Yisun, 1993
BTSH   *Byatshig kungsal meloŋ*, Hri Šao Lis and Skalbzaŋ Lhamo, 2002
CDTD   *Comparative dictionary of Tibetan dialects*, Bielmeier, in preparation
DYGB   *Dagyig Gsarbsgrigs*, Blomthun Bsamgtan, 1994
GShS   Goldstein, Shelling, and Surkhang, 2001

JÄK   Jäschke, 1881 (1995)
OTC   *Old Tibetan Chronicle*
OTDO   *Old Tibetan Documents Online*: http://otdo.aa.tufs.ac.jp
RAMA   *The story of Rāma in Tibet*, de Jong, 1989
SCD   Sarat Chandra Das, 1902
TDD   *Tibetan Documents from Dunhuang*, Imaeda & al., 2007
TETT   *Tibetan to English Translation Tool*, Pelligrini, 2006-2009
TVP   *Die tibetische Version des Papageienbuches*, Herrmann 1983
ThDG   *Thumi dgoŋsgter*, Mkharstod Rdorje Dbaŋphyug, 1979
ZhEH   *Zhang-zhung Tibetan English vocabulary*, Haarh (1968: 27-43)
ZhNN   *Zhang-zhung – Tibetan – English contextual dictionary*, Dagkar Namgyal Nyima, 2003

BIBLIOGRAPHY

Bacot, Jacques, Frederick William Thomas et Ch. Toussaint. 1940. *Documents de Touen-houang relatifs à l'histoire du Tibet*. Paris: Librairie Orientaliste Paul Geuthner.

Bautze-Picron Claudine. 2008. 'Das Bildnis des Buddha'. In: Kunst- und Ausstellungshalle der Bundesrepublik Deutschland (ed.), Gandhara – *Das buddhistische Erbe Pakistans. Legenden Klöster und Paradiese*. Mainz: Philipp von Zabern, 179-183.

Beckwith, Christopher I. 2006. 'Old Tibetan and the dialects and periodization of Old Chinese.' In: Christopher I. Beckwith (ed.). *Medieval Tibeto-Burman languages II. PIATS 2003: Tibetan Studies: Proceedings of the tenth seminar of the International Association for Tibetan Studies, Oxford 2003*. (Brill's Tibetan Studies Library, 10.1.) Leiden: Brill, 179-200.

Bellezza, John Vincent. 2008. *Zhang zhung. Foundations of civilization in Tibet. A historical and ethnoarchaeological study of the monuments, rock art, texts and oral tradition of the ancient Tibetan upland*. (Österreichische Akademie der Wissenschaften, philosophisch-historische Klasse, Denkschriften, 368, Beiträge zur Kultur- und Geistesgeschichte Asiens, 61.) Wien: Österreichische Akademie der Wissenschaften.

Bielmeier, Roland. 1985. *Das Märchen vom Prinzen Čobzaṅ. Eine tibetische Erzählung aus Baltistan. Text, Übersetzung, Grammatik und westtibetisch vergleichendes Glossar*. (Beiträge zur tibetischen Erzählforschung, 6.) St. Augustin: VGH Wissenschaftsverlag.
——. In preparation. *Comparative dictionary of Tibetan dialects*. (Preprint No. I, 1997; pdf-version 02/2008.)

Blomthun Bsamgtan (main ed.). 1994. *Dagyig gsarbsgrigs* [Newly arranged dictionary of spelling]. S.l.: Mtshosnon Mirigs Dpeskrunkhaŋ [Kokonor Nationalities Press].

Curio, Eberhard. 2001. 'Wie Vögel ihr Auge schützen: Zur Arbeitsteilung von Oberlid, Unterlid und Nickhaut.' *Journal of Ornithology* 142.3: 257-272.

Dagkar Namgyal Nyima. 2003. *Zhang-zhung – Tibetan – English contextual dictionary*. Bonn: Selbstverlag.

Denwood, Philip. 1986. 'The Tibetan noun final *-s*.' *Linguistics of the Tibeto-Burman Area*. 9.1: 97-101.

Dgebdun Choshphel (Mkhaspaḥi dbaŋpo Mdosmadpa). 1979. *Bod chenpoḥi sridlugsdaŋ ḥbrel-baḥi rgyalrabs debther dkarpo žes bya* [The genealogy related to the dominion of great Tibet, called the white annals]. Dhasa Bodgžuŋ Šesrig Parkhaŋ [Tibetan Cultural Printing Press, Dharamsala].

Dotson, Brandon. 2004. 'A note on *źaṅ*: maternal relatives of the Tibetan royal line and marriage into the royal family.' *Journal Asiatique* 292.1-2: 75-99.

——. 2009. *The Old Tibetan Annals*. *An annotated translation of Tibet's first history*. With an annotated cartographical documentation by Guntram Hazod. (Österreichische Akademie der Wissenschaften, philosophisch-historische Klasse, Denkschriften, 381.) Wien: Österreichische Akademie der Wissenschaften.

——. Forthcoming. On the Old Tibetan term *khrin* in the legal and ritual lexicons. In: Mark Turin and Bettina Zeisler (eds.). *Himalayan languages*. *Studies in Phonology, Semantics, and Syntax*.

Enoki Kazuo. 1958. On the nationality of the Ephthalites. *Memoirs of the Research Department of the Toyo Bunko* 18: 1-58, plus addenda.

Faulmann, Carl. 1880. *Das Buch der Schrift, enthaltend die Schriftzeichen und Alphabete aller Zeiten und aller Völker des Erdkreises*. 2. erw. Aufl. Wien: Verlag der kaiserlich-königlichen Hof- und Staatsdruckerei.

Fleet, John F. 1973. *The topographical list of the Brihat-Samhita*. [Posthumously] edited by Kalyan Kumar Dasgupta. Calcutta: Semushi.

Francke, August Herrmann. 1912. 'The Tibetan alphabet.' *Epigraphia India* 10 (no. 25): 266-272, plates I-VII.

Francke, August Herrmann and Walter Simon. 1929. 'Addenda.' In: Jäschke, Heinrich August, *Tibetan Grammar*. 3rd edition with Addenda by August Hermann Francke, assisted by W. Simon. 1929. Berlin, Leipzig: Walter de Gruyter, 161 pp. 105-161.

Gedun Choephel. 1978. *The white annals*. Translated by Samten Norboo. Dharamsala: Library of Tibetan Works & Archives.

Gñaḥgoŋ Dkonmchog Tshesbrtan [=Tshebrtan]/ Gao Rui. 1995. *Bodkyi brdarñiŋyigchabdams-bsgrigs/ Tufan wenxian xuandu* [A selection of Tibetan documents in old orthography]. Pecin/ Beijing: Kruŋdbyaŋ Mirigs Slobgrwa Chenmo/ Zhonyang minzu daxue chubanshe [Central Nationalities University].

Goldstein, Melvin C. (ed.) 1994. *Tibetan-English dictionary of Modern Tibetan*. 4th edition. (Bibliotheca Himalayica series II, 7.) Kathmandu: Ratna Pustak Bhandar.

Goldstein, Melvin C., T.N. Shelling, and J.T. Surkhang (eds.). 2001. *The new Tibetan-English dictionary of Modern Tibetan*. Berkeley: University of California Press.

Haarh, Eric. 1968. *The Zhang-zhung language*. *A grammar and dictionary of the unexplored language of the Tibetan Bonpos*. (Acta Jutlandica: Humanistisk Serie, 47.) Aarhus: Universitetsforlaget.

——. 1969. *The Yar-luṅ dynasty*. *A study with particular regard to the contribution by myths and legends to the history of Ancient Tibet and the origin and nature of its kings*. København: Gad.

Hahn, Michael. 1999. '*Blags* und Verwandtes (Miscellanea etymologica tibetica. VI).' In: Helmut Eimer, Michael Hahn, Maria Schetelich et Peter Wyzlic (red. cur.), *Studia Tibetica et Mongolica (Festschrift Manfred Taube)*. (Indica et Tibetica, 34.) Swisttal-Oldendorf: Indica et Tibetica, 123-125.

Hamid, Abdul. 1998. *Ladakhi-English-Urdu dictionary*. Leh: Melong.

Hazod, Guntram. 2000. 'The land of the g.Ya'-bzang-pa – Supplementary data and Summary.' In: Tsering Gyalbo, Guntram Hazod, and Per K. Sørensen, *Civilzation at the foot of Mount Sham-po*. *The royal house of lHa Bug-pa can and the history of g.Ya'-bzang*. (Österreichische Akademie der Wissenschaften, philosophisch-historische Klasse, Denkschriften, 290.) Wien: Österreichische Akademie der Wissenschaften, 203-225.
——. 2005. 'The falcon and the lizard. Yar-lung and the cultic history of its royal temple "Thundering Falcon". In: Per K. Sørensen and Guntram Hazod, in cooperation with Tsering Gyalbo, *Thundering Falcon*. *An inquiry into the history and cult of Khra-'brug, Tibet's first temple*. (Österreichische Akademie der Wissenschaften, philosophisch-historische Klasse, Denkschriften, 333.) Wien: Österreichische Akademie der Wissenschaften, 217-307.
——. 2009. 'Imperial Central Tibet. An annotated cartographical survey of its territorial divisions and key political sites.' In: Brandon Dotson, *The Old Tibetan Annals*. *An annotated translation of Tibet's first history*. With an annotated cartographical documentation by Guntram Hazod. (Österreichische Akademie der Wissenschaften, philosophisch-historische Klasse, Denkschriften, 381.) Wien: Österreichische Akademie der Wissenschaften, 161-231.

Herrmann, Silke. 1983. *Die tibetische Version des Papageienbuches*. (Beiträge zur tibetischen Erzählforschung, 5.) St. Augustin: VGH-Wissenschaftsverlag.

Hill, Nathan W. 2005. 'The verb '*bri* 'to write' in Old Tibetan.' *Ajia Afurika Gengo Bunka Kenkyuu/ Journal of Asian and African Studies* 68: 177-182.
——. 2006a. 'The Old Tibetan chronicle—chapter I.' *Revue d'Études Tibétaines* 10: 89-101.
——. 2006b. 'Tibetan *vwa* 'fox' and the sound change Tibeto-Burman **wa* > Tibetan *o*.' *Linguistics of the Tibeto-Burman Area* 29: 75-90.
——. 2007. 'Aspirated and unaspirated voiceless consonants in Old Tibetan.' *Language and Linguistics* 8: 471-493.

Hinüber, Oskar von. 2009. 'Cremated like a king: the funeral of the Buddha within the Ancient Indian cultural context.' *Kokusai Bukkyogaku Daigakuin Daigaku Kenkyu Kiyo (Journal of the International College for Postgraduate Buddhist Studies)* 13: 33-66.

Hoffmann, Helmut. 1972. 'Several Žaṅ-žuṅ etymologies.' *Oriens extremus* 19: 193-201.

Hogan, Lee C. 1996. 'The moraic structure of Classical Tibetan.' *Linguistics of the Tibeto-Burman Area* 19.1: 115–149.

Hri Šao Lis and Skalbzaŋ Lhamo (eds.). 2002. *Byatshig kungsal meloŋ* [The all clarifying mirror of verbs]. Siliŋ [Xining]: Mtshosŋon Mirigs Dpeskrunkhaŋ [Kokonor Nationalities Press].

Hummel, Siegbert. 1994. "Die Lieder der unglücklichen Königin Sad-mar-kar." *Acta Orientalia, Soc. Orientales Danica, Fennica, Norvegica, Svecica* 55: 161-173.

Imaeda, Yoshiro et al. (eds.). 2007. *Tibetan Documents from Dunhuang kept at the Bibliothèque Nationale de France and the British Library*. (Old Tibetan Documents Online Monograph Series.) Tokyo: Research Institute for Languages and Cultures of Asia and Africa Tokyo University of Foreign Studies. http://otdo.aa.tufs.ac.jp

Jäschke, Heinrich August. 1881. *A Tibetan-English dictionary: with special reference to the prevailing dialects: to which is added an English-Tibetan vocabulary*. London: Routledge & Kegan Paul. Reprint 1995, Delhi: Motilal Banarsidass.

de Jong, Jan Willem. 1973. 'Tibetan *blag-pa* and *blags-pa*.' *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies* 36: 309-312.

——. 1989. *The story of Rāma in Tibet*. Text and translation of the Tun-huang manuscripts. (Tibetan and Indo-Tibetan studies, 1.) Wiesbaden: Franz Steiner.

Karmay, Samten G. 'A Pilgrimage to Kongpo Bonri.' In: Shōren Ihara and Zuihō Yamaguchi (eds.), *Tibetan studies: Proceedings of the 5th Seminar of the International Association of Tibetan Studies, Narita 1989*. Vol. 2. Narita: Naritasan Shinshoji, 527-539.

Lalou, Marcelle. 1952. 'Rituel Bon-po des funérailles royales.' *Journal Asiatique* 240.3: 339-361, 4 plates.

Laufer, Berthold. 1898/1899. 'Ueber das *va zur*. Ein Beitrag zur Phonetik der tibetischen Sprache.' *Wiener Zeitschrift für die Kunde des Morgenlandes* 12: 289-307 (1898); 13: 95-109, 199-226 (1899).

Lerner, Judith A. 2009. 'An Alan seal.' In: Carol Altman Bromberg, Nicholas Sims-Williams, and Ursula Sims-Williams (eds.) *Iranian and Zoroastrian Studies in Honor of Prods Oktor Skjærvø*. *Bulletin of the Asia Institute* 19: 83-89.

Linnenborn, Hiltrud. 2004. *Die frühen Könige von Tibet und ihre Konstruktion in den religiösen Überlieferungen*. (Asiatische Forschungen, 147.) Wiesbaden: Harrassowitz.

Macdonald, Ariane. 1971. 'Une Lecture des Pelliot tibétain 1286, 1287, 1038, 1047, et 1290. Essai sur la formation et l'emploi des mythes politiques dans la religion royale de Sroṅ-bcan Sgam-po.' Dans: Ariane Macdonald (éd.). *Études tibétaines dédiées à la mémoire de Marcelle Lalou*. Paris: Adrien Maisonneuve, 190-391.

Matisoff. James A. 2003. *Handbook of Proto-Tibeto-Burman: System and Philosophy of Sino-Tibetan Reconstruction*. (University of California publications in linguistics, 135.) Berkeley: University of California Press. See also http://escholarship.org/uc/item/19d79619.

Mkharstod Rdorje Dbaŋphyug. 1979. *Dusgsum reḥumig Thumiḥi dgoŋsgter* [The table of the three tenses, Thonmi's treasure of understanding]. Delhi: C.T. Khrto.

Mkhaspa Ldeḥu. 1260/61 (?). *Rgya-Bodkyi chosḥbyuŋ rgyaspa* [The extended history of Buddhism in India and Tibet]. Ed. by Chabspel Tshebrten Phuntshogs and Norbraŋ Orgyan, 1987. Bodljoŋs midmaŋs dpeskrunkhaŋ [Tibetan People Publishing House].

Molè, Gabriella. 1970. *The T'u-yü-hun from the Northern Wei to the time of the Five Dynasties*. (Serie Orientale Roma, 41.) Roma: Istituto Italiano per il Medio ed Estremo Oriente.

Molodin, Vjačeslav I. und Natal'ja V. Polos'mak. 2007. 'Die Denkmäler auf dem Urok-Plateau.' In: Wilfried Menghin, Hermann Parzinger, Anatoli Nagler und Manfred Nawroth (Hrsg.), *Im Zeichen des goldenen Greifen. Königsgräber der Skythen*. München etc.: Prestel, 140-147.

Nebesky-Wojkowitz, René. 1956. *Oracles and demons of Tibet: the cult and iconography of the Tibetan protective deities*. S.-Gravenhage: Mouton.

Norman, Rebecca. In Preparation. *Dictionary of the language spoken by Ladakhis*.

Panglung, Jampa L. 1988. 'Die metrischen Berichte über die Grabmäler der tibetischen Könige. Ihre Überlieferung und ihr Beitrag zur Identifizierung.' In: Helga Uebach and Jampa L. Panglung (eds.), *Tibetan studies*. *Proceedings of the 4th seminar of the International Association for Tibetan Studies, Schloss Hohenkammer – Munich 1985*. (Studia Tibetica.

Quellen und Studien zur tibetischen Lexikographie, 2.) München: Kommission für Zentralasiatische Studien, Bayerische Akademie der Wissenschaften.

Pellegrini, Andrés Montano. 2006-2009. *Tibetan to English Translation Tool*. Version 3.3.0 compiled on 16-March-2009 02:02 PM. http://www.thlib.org/reference/translation-tool

Pelliot, Paul. 1961. *Histoire ancienne du Tibet*. (Oeuvres Posthumes de Paul Pelliot, 5.) Paris: Adrien-Maisonneuve.
——. 1963. *Notes on Marco Polo*, II, ouvrage posthume. Paris: Adrien-Maisonneuve.

Petri, Winfried. 1966. 'Uigur and Tibetan lists of the Indian lunar mansions.' *Indian Journal of History of Science* 1.2: 83-90.

Ramsay, Henry Lushington. 1890. *Western Tibet: A practical dictionary of the language and customs of the districts included in the Ladák wazarat*. Lahore: W. Ball & Co. Government Printers.

Richardson, Hugh. 1998a. 'The first Tibetan *Chos-'byung.*' In: Hugh Richardson, *High peaks, pure earth*. *Collected Writings on Tibetan History and Culture*. Ed. with an introduction by Michael Aris. London: Serindia Publications, 89-99. [Originally published 1980 in *The Tibet Journal* 5.3: 62-73.]
——. 1998b. 'The succession to Glang-dar-ma.' In: Hugh Richardson, *High peaks, pure earth*. *Collected Writings on Tibetan History and Culture*. Ed. with an introduction by Michael Aris. London: Serindia Publications, 106-113. [Originally published 1988 in Gherhardo Gnoli e Lionello Lanciotti (ed. cur.), *Orientalia Josephi Tucci memoriae dicata*. (Serie orientale Roma 56.3). Roma: Is.M.E.O, 1221-1229.]
——. 1998c. 'The origin of the Tibetan kingdom.' In: Hugh Richardson, *High peaks, pure earth*. *Collected Writings on Tibetan History and Culture*. Ed. with an introduction by Michael Aris. London: Serindia Publications, 124-134. [Originally published 1989 in *Bulletin of Tibetology* NS. 3, 1989.2: 5-19.]

Rockhill, William Woodville. 1891. *The land of the Lamas: notes of a journey through China, Mongolia and Tibet*. London: Longmans, Green. Reprint 2005, New Delhi: Winsome Books.

Roerich, Georges de [Jurij Nicholas Rerich]. 1930. 'The Animal Style among the nomad tribes of northern Tibet'. *Skytika* 3: 27-41.

Roerich, Georges de. 1958. *Le parler de l'Amdo*. *Étude d'un dialecte archaïque du Tibet*. (Serie Orientale Roma, 18.) Roma: Istituto Italiano per il Medio ed Estremo Oriente.

Róna-Tas, András. 1985. *Wiener Vorlesungen zur Sprach- und Kulturgeschichte Tibets*. Wien: Arbeitskreis für Tibetische und Buddhistische Studien Universität Wien.

Samašev. 2007. 'Die Fürstengräber des Siebenstromlandes.' In: Wilfried Menghin, Hermann Parzinger, Anatoli Nagler und Manfred Nawroth (Hrsg.), *Im Zeichen des goldenen Greifen*. *Königsgräber der Skythen*. München etc.: Prestel, 162-170.

Sarat Chandra Das. 1902. *A Tibetan-English dictionary*. Revised by Graham Sandberg and A. William Heyde. Calcutta: Bengal Secretariat Book Depot. Reprint 1985, Jalandhar: Gaurav.

Simon, Walter. 1949. 'The range of sound alternation in Tibetan word families.' *Asia Major*, 1: 3-15.
——. 1975. 'Tibetan initial clusters of nasals and *r*.' *Asia Major*, 19.2: 246-51.
——. 1977. 'Alternation of final vowel with final dental nasal or plosive in Tibetan.' *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies* 40.1: 51-57.

Smith, John D. 2009. 'Consistency and character in the Mahābhārata.' *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies* 72.1: 101–112.

Snellgrove, David Llewellyn and Tadeusz Skorupski. 1980. *The cultural heritage of Ladakh*. *Vol. 2*. *Zanskar and the cave temples of Ladakh*. Warminster: Aris & Phillips.

Sprigg, Richard Keith. 1970. '*Vyañjanabhakti*, and irregularities in the Tibetan verb.' *Bulletin of Tibetology* 7.2: 5-19.
——. 2002. *Balti-English English-Balti Dictionary*. London, N.Y: RoutledgeCurzon.

Stein, Marc Aurel. 1900. *Kalhaṇa's Rājataraṅgiṇi: a chronicle of the kings of Kaśmīr, translated, with an introduction, commentary, & appendices by M.A. Stein*. Vol. I, Introduction, Books I-VII. Vol. II, Book VIII, notes, geographical memoir, index, maps. A. Westminster: Constable & Co., 1900. Reprint 1961, Delhi etc.: Motilal Banarsidass.

Stein, Rolf-Alfred. 1941. 'Notes d'étymologie tibétaine.' *Bulletin de l'École Française d'Extrême-Orient*. 41: 203-231.
——. 1952. 'Récentes études tibétaines.' *Journal Asiatique* 240: 79-106.
——. 1959. *Recherches sur l'épopée et le barde au Tibet*. (Bibliothèque de l'Institut des Hautes Études Chinoises, 13.) Paris: Presses universitaires de France.
——. 1961. *Les tribus anciennes des marches sino-tibétaines. Légendes, classifications et histoire*. (Bibliothèque de l'Institut des Hautes Études Chinoises, 15.) Paris: Presses Universitaires de France.
——. 1962. *La civilisation tibétaine*. (Collection Sigma, 1.) Paris: Dunod.
——. 1973. 'Un ensemble sémantique tibétain: créer et procréer, être et devenir, vivre, nourrir et guérir.' *Bulletin of the School of Oriental and African Studies* 36: 412-423.

Takeuchi, Tsuguhito. 1995. *Old Tibetan contracts from Central Asia*. Tokyo: Daizo Shuppan.
——. 1997/1998. *Old Tibetan manuscripts from East Turkestan in the Stein Collection of the British Library*. Vol. I: Plates (1997), vol. II: Descriptive catalogue (1998), supplm. to vol. II: Syllabic index (1998). (Bibliotheca Codicum Asiaticorum, 11-12.) Tokyo, London: The Centre for East Asian Cultural Studies for Unesco, The Toyo Bunko & The British Library.

Thomas, Frederick William. 1951. *Tibetan literary texts and documents concerning Chinese Turkestan*. Part II: documents. London: Royal Asiatic Society.
——. 1957. *Ancient folk-literature from north-eastern Tibet*. (Abhandlungen der Deutschen Akademie der Wissenschaften zu Berlin, Klasse für Sprachen, Literatur und Kunst, Jahrgang 1952, Nr. 3.) Berlin: Akademie-Verlag.

Tournadre, Nicolas. 1994. 'Tibetan ergativity and the trajectory model.' In Hajime Kitamura, Tatsuo Nishida and Yasuhiko Nagano (eds.), *Current Issues in Sino-Tibetan Linguistics*. Osaka: The Organising Committee, 637–648.

Tucci, Guiseppe. 1955. 'The sacred characters of the Tibetan kings.' *East and West* 6.3: 197-205.
——. 1971. 'Travels of Tibetan pilgrims in the Swat valley.' In *Opera Minora* II, ed. by Luciano Petech. (Studi Orientali, 6.) Roma: Bardi.

Uebach, Helga. 1997. 'Eminent ladies of the Tibetan Empire according to Old Tibetan texts.' In: Samten G. Karmay et Philippe Sagant (éds.), *Les habitants du Toit du Monde. Études recueillies en hommage à Alexander W. Macdonald*. Nanterre: Societé d'ethnologie.
——. 2008. 'From red tally to yellow paper. The official introduction of paper in Tibetan administration in 744/745.' In: Françoise Pommaret and Jean-Luc Achard (eds.), *Tibetan Studies in Honor of Samten Karmay Part I — Historical, Cultural and Linguistic Studies*. *Revue d'Études Tibétaines* 14: 57-69. http://www.digitalhimalaya.com/collections/journals/ret/pdf/ret_14.pdf.

Uray, Géza. 1955. 'On the Tibetan Letters *ba* and *wa*: Contribution to the Origin and History of the Tibetan Alphabet.' *Acta Linguistica Academiae Scientarum Hungariae* 5.1: 101-121.

——. 1960. 'The four horns of Tibet according to the Royal Annals.' *Acta Orientalia Academiae Scientiarum Hungaricae* 10.1: 31-57.

——. 1966. ''*Greṅ*, the alleged old Tibetan equivalent for the ethnic name Ch'iang.' *Acta Orientalia Academiae Scientiarum Hungaricae* 19: 245-256.

——. 1972. 'Queen Sad-mar-kar's songs in the Old Tibetan Chronicle.' *Acta Orientalia Academiae Scientiarum Hungaricae* 25: 5-38.

Van Schaik, Sam. 2008. 'What happens between death and the tomb?' http://earlytibet.com/2008/10/27/between-death-and-the-tomb/.

Wang [Dbaŋrgyal] and Bsodnams Skyid (eds.). 1992. *Tunhoŋnas thonpaḥi bodkyi lorgyus yigcha* [Tibetan historical accounts originating from Tun-huang]. Pecin [Beijing]: Mirigs Dpeskrunkhaŋ [Nationalities Publishing House].

Wylie, Turrell. 1963. ''O-lde-spu-rgyal and the introduction of Bon to Tibet.' *Central Asian Journal* 8: 93-103.

Yamaguchi, Zuihō. 1970. 'Su-p'i 蘇毗 or Sun-po 孫波. A historico-geographical study on the relation between *rTsaṅ yul* and *Yan lag gsum paḥi ru*.' *Acta Asiatica* 19: 97-133.

Zeisler, Bettina. 2001. 'The development of temporal coding in Tibetan: some suggestions for a functional internal reconstruction. Part II: The original semantics of the 'past stem' of controlled action verbs and the re-organisation of the Proto-Tibetan verb system.' *Zentralasiatische Studien* 31: 169–216.

——. 2004. *Relative Tense and aspectual values in Tibetan languages*. *A comparative study*. Trends in Linguistics, Studies and Monographs, 150. Mouton de Gruyter, Berlin, New York.

——. 2005. 'On the position of Ladakhi and Balti in the Tibetan language family.' In: John Bray (ed.), *Ladakhi histories: local and regional perspectives*. (Brill's Tibetan Studies Library, 9.) Brill, Leiden etc., 41-64.

——. 2006. 'The Tibetan understanding of *karman*: Some problems of Tibetan case marking.' In: Christopher I. Beckwith (ed.), *Medieval Tibeto-Burman languages II, PIATS 2003: Tibetan studies: Proceedings of the Tenth Seminar of the International Association for Tibetan Studies, Oxford 2003*. (Brills Tibetan Studies Library, 10.) Brill, Leiden, Boston, 57–101.

——. 2007a. 'Case patterns and pattern variation in Ladakhi: a field report.' In: Roland Bielmeier and Felix Haller (eds.), *Linguistics of the Himalayas and beyond*. (Trends in Linguistics: Studies and Monographs, 196.) Berlin: Mouton de Gruyter, 399-425.

——. 2007b. 'On the position of Ladakhi and Balti in the Tibetan language family.' In: John Bray and Nawang Tsering Shakspo (eds.) *Recent research on Ladakh 2007*. Leh: J & K Academy for Art, Culture & Science, International Association for Ladakh Studies, 27-33.

——. Forthcoming. *Ethnic diversity, language contact, and the old Tibetan* lingua franca*: early Tibetan history and the development of the modern Tibetan languages*.

Zhang Yisun (ed.). 1993. Bod-Rgya tshigmdzod chenmo-/ Zang-Han Da Cidian [Great Tibetan-Chinese dictionary]. Pecin-/ Beijing: Mirigs dpeskrunkhaŋ-/ Minzu Chubanshe [Nationalities Press].